This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

ESSENTIALS OF THE ENGLISH SENTENCE

M. P. SWAB

Educ T 759.00.512

HARVARD COLLEGE
LIBRARY

GIFT OF THE
GRADUATE SCHOOL
OF EDUCATION

3 2044 097 066 583

THE ESSENTIALS

OF

THE ENGLISH SENTENCE

BY

ELIAS J. MacEWAN, M.A.

BOSTON, U.S.A.
D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS
1900

EducT 759.00.512

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
GIFT OF THE
GRADUATE SCHOOL OF EDUCATION
May 7, 1920

COPYRIGHT, 1900
BY D. C. HEATH & CO.

Plimpton Press
H. M. PLIMPTON & CO., PRINTERS & BINDERS,
NORWOOD, MASS., U.S.A.

PREFACE

THIS book has been prepared for use in high schools, preparatory schools, academies, and such technical colleges as receive students directly from the common schools. The author has aimed to put before the learner those facts of the English language which are most essential as a preparation either for the further study of English in composition, rhetoric, and literature, or for the study of another language. Preparatory, therefore, to a full and adequate treatment of the structure of the English sentence, — the real subject of the work, — there is presented such an outline of the logical classification of words, of the simple system of English word-inflection and word-grouping, and of the most common principles of syntax, as will answer the purpose of a review.

It is assumed that the student has already had a preliminary survey of the field of English grammar. In the discussion of the parts of speech, therefore, only the important facts are given, it being left to the teacher to supply fuller details and illustration as needed. In discussing the structure of the sentence, the author has aimed to state facts and principles simply, clearly, accu-

rately, and in methodical order, and to enforce the statement by abundance of illustration. The illustrations are partly made "off hand" and partly selected from reputable authors. All of the sentences used as exercises for parsing or for sentence analyses are selected from standard literature. Of colloquial and provincial usage no account has been taken.

Teachers familiar with Whitney's *Essentials of English Grammar* will, in the following pages, be frequently reminded of that excellent book, though they will not see its purely inductive method. Positive, categorical statement of established elementary facts, with apt and abundant verification, is an economical method of reviewing as well as of communicating such facts; and to maturer students of the elementary facts of language, economy of time and effort is an important consideration. This method, therefore, prevails in the first part of the book.

Professor Whitney's suggestion for a classification of moods and "verb phrases" analogous to moods has been adopted and expanded. Thus there is built up by means of verbs used only, or chiefly, as auxiliaries, a full scheme of conjugation, simple, natural, philosophical, and for the most part corresponding to the scheme of conjugation in other languages.

As the chief purpose of this book is to make clear to those who have not studied other languages the struc-

ture of the sentence as it is used in modern English, no attempt has been made to show the history of constructions, nor to compare English constructions with those of other languages, although occasional hints are given. No constructive work has been suggested, nor have examples of the use of incorrect forms and faulty structure been offered for criticism. Constructive work will naturally follow in the study of composition and rhetoric; and the language heard in the classroom, in ordinary conversation, or used in the ordinary written exercises, will be likely to afford sufficient material for criticism and correction. The subjects discussed have been so presented as to keep the learner's attention upon the main facts of the English sentence, just as they are in themselves, unencumbered with the errors of careless writers, and with no reference to the analogies of other languages or divergencies from them.

The usual method of indicating the relative importance of matter by type of varying size, and of showing the coördination and subordination of parts by an elaborate system of figuring, has not been followed. A prospective view of each section is given in the introductory charts and a review is afforded by the summaries at the close of each section. The page is made to show only fact, principle, and illustration as clearly, simply, and briefly as possible. A few matters of minor importance are added in footnotes.

A system of diagraming has been suggested in footnotes. While the method of expressing syntactical relations by the diagram is subject to abuse, it may be made very useful. Let it be understood that the diagram is only a graphic method of *expressing* analysis, let the *meaning of position* in the diagram be fully understood, and the diagram becomes a very economical device; but as soon as it becomes an end in itself, as soon as it is made to control rather than to express analyses, the diagram had better be abandoned.

E. J. MacEWAN.

JANUARY, 1900.

CONTENTS

PART FIRST

PARTS OF SPEECH

CHAPTER		PAGE
I.	Nouns	4
II.	Pronouns	20
III.	Adjectives	32
IV.	Verbs	44
V.	Adverbs	96
VI.	Conjunctions	102
VII.	Prepositions	108
VIII.	Interjections	114

PART SECOND

SYNTAX. THE SIMPLE SENTENCE

I.	Definitions	119
II.	Subject and Predicate	122
III.	Predicate Nominative	133
IV.	Object, Direct and Indirect	140
V.	Objective or Factitive Predicate	151
VI.	Attributive and Appositive Modifiers	156
VII.	Possessive Case of Nouns and Pronouns	164

CHAPTER		PAGE
VIII.	Adverbs	171
IX.	Adverbial Objective Nouns	177
X.	Nominative Case Absolute	182
XI.	Prepositional Phrases	186
XII.	Infinitives	195
XIII.	Participles	211
XIV.	Independent Elements	221
XV.	Summary of Elements and their Uses	226
XVI.	The Interrogative Sentence	230
XVII.	The Imperative and Exclamatory Sentence	237
XVIII.	The Compound Sentence	244
XIX.	The Complex Sentence	251
	1. Adjective Clauses	252
	2. Adverb Clauses	263
	3. Substantive Clauses	273
XX.	Compound-Complex Sentences	282
XXI.	Abbreviated or Incomplete Sentences	286

THE ESSENTIALS

OF

THE ENGLISH SENTENCE

PARTS OF SPEECH

- 1 Essential
  - *a* Noun
  - *b* (Pronoun)
  - *c* Verb
- 2 Auxiliary
  - *a* Adjective
  - *b* Adverb
- 3 Connective
  - *a* Conjunction
  - *b* Preposition
  - *c* (Relative word)
- 4 Independent
  - *a* Interjection
  - *b* (Exclamation)
  - *c* (Word of address)

PART FIRST

PARTS OF SPEECH

THE parts of speech are the classes of words used in either spoken or written sentences. In English the parts of speech are classified on the basis of their meaning, use, and function, and not on their form. They are nouns, pronouns, adjectives, verbs, adverbs, conjunctions, prepositions, and interjections. **Parts of speech**

Some of the parts of speech change their form to indicate grammatical properties, to show their office in the sentence, or to agree with some other part of speech. This change of form is called inflection. For the same purposes some parts of speech are grouped with other words. **Inflection**

The change in the form of nouns and pronouns is called their declension. The change in form of adjectives and adverbs, or the grouping of certain adverbs with them, is called comparison. The change in form of verbs, together with the grouping of verbs with their auxiliaries, is called conjugation. The construction of a word is its relation to other words in the sentence. **Declension** **Comparison** **Conjugation** **Construction**

NOUN
- 1 Definition. Uses
- 2 Things named
- 3 Kinds
  - (1) On basis of form
    - *a* Simple
    - *b* Derivative
    - *c* Compound
  - (2) On basis of meaning
    - *a* Proper
    - *b* Common
      - (*a*) Concrete
      - (*b*) Abstract
      - (*c*) Individual
      - (*d*) Collective
- 4 Properties
  - *a* Gender
    - Masculine
    - Feminine
    - Neuter
  - *b* Person
    - First
    - Second
    - Third
  - *c* Number
    - Singular
    - Plural
  - *d* Case
    - Nominative
    - Possessive
    - Objective
- 5 Inflection (Declension)
  - *a* For number
    - Regular
    - Irregular
  - *b* For case
    - Possessive
- 6 Substitutes
  - *a* For nouns
    - Pronouns
    - Adjectives
    - Infinitives
    - Phrases
    - Clauses
  - *b* Nouns for
    - Adjectives
    - Adverbs

I. NOUNS

A noun is a word that names. It designates persons, places, objects, materials, qualities, ideas, actions, and conditions: — Definition

tailor	*post*	*heaviness*	*battle*
garden	*lead*	*delusion*	*health*

A noun may be: — Uses

Subject of a verb, —

Men must work, and *women* must weep.

Object of a verb or of a preposition, —

Men love *ease*, but are seldom at *ease*.

Predicate nominative or predicate objective, —

This is a *ghost*, or I'll make it a *ghost*.

Appositive modifier, —

Othello, the *Moor*, is mad.

Possessive modifier, —

Othello's occupation is gone.

Adverbial modifier; in the objective case, —

Victoria has ruled sixty *years*.

in the nominative case absolute, —

Victoria abdicating, the Prince of Wales will be king.

A word of address, —

Father Abraham, what these Christians are!

A word of exclamation,—

Horror! What a *deed!*

Kinds Form According to their form, nouns are simple, derivative, or compound. A simple noun can be traced to no other word in the language:—

boy *girl* *house* *beast* *flower*

A derivative noun is formed from another word by means of a prefix, a suffix, or some internal change:—

tru*th* *un*tru*th* *in*temper*ance* sing*er* s*o*ng

A prefix is a syllable placed before a word to modify its meaning; a suffix is a syllable placed after a word to modify its meaning.

A compound noun is formed of two or more independent words:—

schoolhouse *bathtub* *washboard* *blackbird*

Application According to their application nouns are proper or common. A proper noun names an individual person, place, animal, object, or thing:—

Queen Anne *London* *Towser* *Excalibur* *John Street*

A common noun is applied to any one in a class of persons, animals, objects, places, or things:—

queen *city* *dog* *sword* *street*

Common nouns are called concrete if they designate materials, objects, special instances, and the like:—

gold *wheat* *church* *animal* *battle of Brandywine*

Abstract nouns name qualities, actions, conditions, appearances: —

solidity *passage* *decay* *beauty*

Nouns are called individual if they represent single things; collective, if they stand for a group: —

soldier *student* *bird* *army* *college* *flock*

The grammatical properties of nouns are gender, person, number, and case. **Properties**

Gender is a distinction of sex. Names of male beings are of the masculine gender; names of female beings are of the feminine gender: — **Gender**

father *son* *mother* *daughter*

Names of inanimate things and of living beings whose sex is either not determined or not thought of, are of the neuter gender: —

pen *fire* *germ* *plant* *bug* *insect*

Names applied alike to males and females are either masculine or feminine: —

parent *child* *relative* *sovereign*

Feminine nouns are distinguished from the masculine in several ways. Some are inflected forms of the masculine, or words derived from the masculine: — **Formation of feminine**

By adding *ess*, — giant*ess*, host*ess*, priest*ess*.

By adding *ess* to the masculine modified, — abb(ot)*ess*, emp(ero)*ress*, negr(o)*ess*, sorce(re)*ress*.

Note. — Proper nouns and words derived from proper nouns begin with a capital letter. Common nouns made proper by personification begin with a capital letter.

By changing Latin *tor* to *trix*, — execut(o)*rix*, testat(o)*rix*.
By adding *ine* or *ina* to some foreign words, — hero*ine*, czar*ina*.

In many cases different words, or different essential parts of words, are used to distinguish gender. This is a matter of meaning, not of grammar: —

boy	*girl*	*king*	*queen*
father	*mother*	*lord*	*lady*
son	*daughter*	*gentleman*	*gentlewoman*
man	*woman*	*landlord*	*landlady*

In some cases a noun of either gender has corresponding nouns for masculine and feminine: —

child	*boy*	*girl*	*sheep*	*ram*	*ewe*
parent	*father*	*mother*	*fowl*	*cock*	*hen*
ruler	*king*	*queen*	*deer*	*stag* or *hart*	*roe*

In some cases gender is indicated by combining a modifying word with a noun of either gender: —

As prefix, —

*man*servant	*maid*servant	*cock* sparrow	*hen* sparrow
he goat	*she* goat	*bull* calf	*heifer* calf

As suffix, — turkey *cock*, turkey *hen*.

Attributed gender

Names of inanimate objects are sometimes given gender by personification or analogy; and names of animals possessing great size, strength, courage, fierceness, boldness, are sometimes made masculine; while names of animals possessing gracefulness, beauty, delicacy, and the like, are thought of as feminine: —

sun moon *oak lily* *lion cat* *death hope*

Masculine nouns, used as general terms, include both sexes: —

Man (men and women) is mortal.
The *horse* (masculine and feminine) is a useful animal.

Person

Person distinguishes the speaker, the hearer, and the being or thing spoken about. The name of the speaker is of the first person; the noun naming the one addressed is of the second person; the name of the being or thing spoken of is of the third person. Nouns are generally in the third person. They may be in the second person as words of address, or in the first or second person as appositives: —

I, *John*, saw these things. *Father*, forgive them.

Number

Number indicates whether one or more than one is meant. A noun in the singular number denotes a single thing; in the plural, denotes two or more: —

boy boys *man men* *ox oxen*

Formation of plural

Nouns are inflected for number. The plural is regularly formed from the singular by the addition of *s* or *es*. Many nouns form the plural irregularly: — nouns changing the ending *f*, *th*, *y*; nouns undergoing internal change; nouns adding *n* with or without other change; foreign nouns retaining foreign plurals. Some nouns are alike in the singular and plural; some have no plural, and some have no singular.

English nouns regularly add *s* to the singular to form the plural: —

Regular

hat*s* day*s* fee*s* eye*s* cake*s* cough*s* truth*s*

Nouns ending in a sibilant sound or a palatal stop not followed by mute *e* add *es*: —

	kiss*es*	box*es*	buzz*es*	church*es*	fish*es*	match*es*
But	horse*s*	prize*s*	judge*s*	ice*s*		

Some nouns ending in *o* add *es*: —

	calico*es*	echo*es*	negro*es*	volcano*es*	mulatto*es*
	cargo*es*	hero*es*	potato*es*	manifesto*es*	tomato*es*
But		bravo*s*	zero*s*		

Nouns ending in *y* preceded by a consonant change *y* to *i* and add *es*: —

Irregular bab*ies* dut*ies* lobb*ies* tid*ies* glor*ies*

Some nouns ending in an *f* sound change the *f* to *v*, and if the word ends in *e* mute, add *s*; if not, *es*: —

	hal*ves*	cal*ves*	kni*ves*	loa*ves*
	lea*ves*	wi*ves*	shel*ves*	wol*ves*
But	staff*s* or sta*ves*		wharf*s* or whar*ves*	
	puff*s*	fife*s*	stuff*s*	scarf*s*
	cliff*s*	hoof*s*	dwarf*s*	and others.

Some nouns ending in hard, or voiceless, *th* change this to soft, or voiced, *th* before *s* or *es*: —

oa*ths*	pa*ths*	clo*thes*	mou*ths*

Some nouns have two plurals with a difference in meaning: —

die dies di*ce*	cloth cloth*s* clothe*s*
pea pea*s* pea*se*	genius genius*es* geni*i*
penny penn*ies* pen*ce*	index indexe*s* indic*es*
brother brother*s* brethr*en*	

Letters, figures, and words cited add an apostrophe and *s* (*'s*): —

9*'s* &*'s* a*'s* and*'s* my*'s*

Some nouns add *n*, *en*, or *ne* with or without other change: —

ox*en* brethr*en* childr*en* k*ine*

Some nouns form their plural by change of root vowel with or without other change: —

man m*e*n foot f*ee*t goose g*ee*se mouse m*i*ce
woman wom*e*n tooth t*ee*th louse l*i*ce

Some adopted foreign nouns retain their foreign plural: — **Foreign**

ax*is* ax*es* criterion criteri*a* madame m*es*dame*s*
basis bas*es* miasma miasmat*a* bandit bandit*ti*
datum dat*a* magus mag*i* beau beau*x*
larva larv*æ* vortex vort*ices* genus gener*a*
and many others.

Certain names of animals, fish, collective nouns, and a few others do not change for the plural: — **No change**

sheep	*fowl*	*pike*	*couple*	*pair*	*folk*
swine	*trout*	*cod*	*dozen*	*sail*	*heathen*
deer	*salmon*	*pout*	*gross*	*ton*	*people*
fish	*shad*	*brace*	*head*	*cannon*	*shot*

But some of these form a regular plural, — fish*es*, couple*s*, dozen*s*, pair*s*, people*s*.

Some nouns are rarely or never used in the plural: —

Names denoting material, —

	gold	*air*	*butter*	*wine*
But	*golds*	*airs*	*butters*	*wines*

denoting kinds of the material; so

No plural

coppers	*leads*	*irons*	*clays*

meaning masses of something made from the material.

Abstract nouns, —

pride	*whiteness*	*negligence*	*peace*	*thankfulness*
But	*charities*	*loves*	*heats*	*beauties*

signifying the quality in separate acts or exhibitions.

Proper nouns, —

Lincoln	*London*	*James*	*Brown*

But, the *Lincolns*, the *Jameses*, meaning different individuals of this name, or the *Websters*, the *Wagners*, meaning those possessing the qualities of Webster or Wagner.

Some nouns have no singular: —

No singular

annals	*bowels*	*gallows*	*shears*	*tidings*
assets	*breeches*	*measles*	*scissors*	*tongs*
banns	*drawers*	*nuptials*	*snuffers*	*vitals*
bellows	*dregs*	*obsequies*	*thanks*	*victuals*
billiards	*entrails*	*pincers*	*trousers*	*vespers*

and many others.

Some nouns though singular in form are plural in meaning: —

Singular plural

vermin	*cattle*	*folk*	*cavalry*	*poultry*

Some nouns seeming plural in form are singular: —

				Plural singular
news	*riches*	*summons*	*physics*	
means	*alms*	*optics*	*ethics*	

and the like.

Compound nouns usually add the plural sign to the chief word: —

			Compounds
black*birds*	house*wives*	*brothers*-in-law	
sea*men*	*hangers*-on	draw*bridges*	

But descriptive compounds regularly add *s* to the last word: —

red*coats*	wash*tubs*	mouth*fuls*
pick*pockets*	forget-me-*nots*	pail*fuls*

A noun of measure, singular in form, is often used in a plural sense after a numeral indicating plurality: —

		Measure
five *pound* note	four *pair* of shoes	
ten *sail*	a twenty *year* lease	
four *head* of cattle	ten *stand* of arms	
a ten *foot* pole		

Case is a distinction as to both the form of a noun and its office in the sentence. The nominative case and the objective case of nouns have the same form; but to make the treatment of nouns accord with that of pronouns which have different forms, nominative and objective, nouns in certain offices are said to be in the nominative, or in the objective case. The nominative case is the case of the subject of the sentence, the predicate after a copulative verb, the name of address, the

Case

Nominative uses

appositive of one of these three, the case of exclamation, the case of pleonasm, and the case absolute.

Objective uses The objective case is the case of the object of a verb, direct or indirect, the objective predicate after factitive verbs, the object of a preposition, the noun used adverbially, the appositive of another noun in the objective case.

Possessive uses The possessive case is the case of a noun used as an adjective modifier.

The possessive case is formed by adding an apostrophe and *s* (*'s*) to the nominative of all nouns except plurals ending in *s*; these take the apostrophe only: —

man man*'s* men men*'s* girl girl*'s* girls girls*'*

The complete inflection of a noun is as follows: —

Inflection

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	boy	boys
Possessive	boy's	boys'
Objective	boy	boys
Nominative	child	children
Possessive	child's	children's
Objective	child	children

Substitute For the possessive case, an objective with *of* may be used; and when a noun contains a succession of hissing sounds, or ends in a hissing sound, this construction is preferable: —

the king*'s* enemies, or the enemies *of* the *king*
Telemachus*'s* father, or the father *of Telemachus*
Ulysses*'s* wanderings, or the wanderings *of Ulysses*

Compound nouns, combinations of two names, or a name preceded by a title or followed by a descriptive

phrase, take the possessive sign at the end of the last word: — One possessive sign

brother-in-law's the Duke of Argyle's
Andrew Jackson's John Jones Esquire's,
Queen Victoria's his dead and forgotten father Edward's

Sometimes two or more words connected by *and* or *or* are treated in the same way: —

God and nature's hand a term or two's residence
a week or ten days' study

The possessive case is limited, in ordinary discourse, to the names of persons, — proper nouns and class nouns, — animals, and dignified objects: — Use limited

Mr. *Brown's* occupation the *horse's* hoofs
the *emperor's* will the *sun's* rays

But

the roof *of the house* a flight *of fancy*
the functions *of government* the well-being *of society*

In poetic language, however, the possessive form is used indiscriminately: —

life's substance and show for *love's* sake, not *hate's*
law's barrier riven

Other parts of speech, as well as groups of words, are substituted for nouns, and are then said to be used substantively. Substitutes for nouns

Adjectives are used as abstract nouns in the singular: —

the *wrong* the *right* the *past* and the *future*
the *good* the *true* the *beautiful* the *thickest* of the fray
the *right* and the *left*

Descriptive adjectives are used as concrete nouns with a plural meaning: —

the *rich* or the *poor* the *living* and the *dead* the *virtuous*

Many descriptive adjectives are used as nouns in both singular and plural, especially adjectives of nationality: —

an *American* the *Americans* a *noble* the *nobles*
the *English Dutch Chinese* *goods* and *chattels*
a *brave* the *braves*

Adverbs of time and place are frequently used as nouns after prepositions: —

from *abroad* since *then* beyond *there*

Another part of speech used without change as a noun, may be said to become a noun by conversion.

Any word used merely as a *word*, infinitives, infinitive phrases, and clauses are used as nouns: —

And is a conjunction.
To meddle is his fault.
What he wanted was uncertain.

Nouns are sometimes used with an adjective value, and sometimes with the force of adverbs: —

Substituted nouns

a *rail* fence going *home*
a *mud* hovel worth *money*

Parsing

Parsing a part of speech consists in giving its kind, its formation, its classification on various bases, its properties, its construction, and its inflection.

EXERCISE

Parse the nouns and expressions used as nouns.

Model. — After a brief *chase* the *officers* caught the *runaway*.

chase is a noun converted from the verb *chase*	*officer* is a noun derived from the noun *office*, suffix (*e*)*r*	*runaway* is a noun, compound of the verb *run* and adverb *away*
simple	common	common
common	concrete	concrete
abstract	masculine	either gender
neuter	third	third
third	singular	singular
singular	nominative subject of the verb *caught*	objective after the verb *caught*
objective after prep. *of*	officer officers	runaway runaways
	officer's officers'	runaway's runaways'

1. Do you long for the conversation of the wise? This, then, is what you have to do: learn to understand it.

2. No ambition is of any use.

3. That is exactly what I think.

4. When you come to a good book, you must ask yourself, "Am I inclined to work as an Australian would?"

5. "Are my shovel and pickaxes in good order, my sleeves well up to the elbow, my breath good, and my temper sweet?"

6. You must get into the habit of looking intensely at words, and assuring yourself of their meaning, syllable by syllable, letter by letter.

7. It takes a whole lifetime to learn any language perfectly.

8. Can the bishop explain how Bill got into the habit of beating Nancy about the head? If he cannot, he is no bishop, he has no sight of things.

9. There are two kinds of breath with which we may be filled, God's breath, and man's. God's breath is health, and life, and peace.

10. Know that the God of heaven loves active, modest, and kind people, and hates the idle, proud, greedy, and cruel.

11. Most men's minds are little better than rough heath wilderness.

12. It matters to you, king of men, whether your people hate you and die by you, or love you and live for you.

13. In this by-place of nature, there abode, in a remote period of American history, that is to say, some thirty years since, a worthy wight of the name of Ichabod Crane, who sojourned, or, as he expressed it, "tarried," in Sleepy Hollow, for the purpose of instructing the children of the vicinity.

14. The cognomen of Crane was not inapplicable to his person. He was tall, but exceedingly lank, with narrow shoulders, long arms and legs, hands that dangled a mile out of his sleeves, feet that might have served for shovels, and his whole frame most loosely held together. His head was small, and flat at top, with huge ears, large green glassy eyes, and a long snipe nose, so that it looked like a weathercock perched upon his spindle neck, to tell which way the wind blew. To see him striding along the profile of a hill on a windy day, with his clothes bagging and fluttering about him, one might have mistaken him for the genius of famine descending upon the earth, or some scarecrow eloped from a cornfield.

15. Oh! there is an enduring tenderness in the love of a mother to her son that transcends all other affections of the heart. It is neither to be chilled by selfishness, nor daunted

by danger, nor stifled by ingratitude. She will sacrifice every comfort to his convenience; she will surrender every pleasure to his enjoyment; she will glory in his fame and exult in his prosperity; and if misfortune overtake him, he will be the dearer to her from misfortune; and if disgrace settle upon his name, she will still love and cherish him in spite of his disgrace; and if all the world besides cast him off, she will be all the world to him.

16. This is his commandment, that ye love one another and that ye bear one another's burdens. Many are called, but few are chosen.

17. Thrice he essayed, and thrice in spite of scorn,
Tears such as angels weep burst forth.

18. All this he called "doing his duty" by their parents; and he never inflicted a chastisement without following it by the assurance, so consolatory to the smarting urchin, that "he would remember it, and be thankful for it, the longest day he had to live."

19. All our knowledge is, ourselves to know.
Who wickedly is wise, or madly brave,
Is but the more a fool, the more a knave.
How much of other each is sure to cost,
How each for other oft is wholly lost.

20. Hast thou performed thy mission which I gave?
What is it thou hast seen? or what hast heard?
Watch what thou seest, and lightly bring me word.
I see thee, what thou art.

PRONOUN

1. Definition. Uses
2. Kinds
   - (1) Basis of form and use
     - *a* Simple
     - *b* Compound

     (See Personal, Relative, Indefinite)
   - (2) Basis of meaning
     - *a* Personal
       - (*a*) Definition
       - (*b*) Kinds: Simple; Compound; Emphatic; Reflexive
       - (*c*) Uses. Agreement
       - (*d*) Inflection
     - *b* Demonstrative
       - (*a*) Definition
       - (*b*) Uses
       - (*c*) Inflection
     - *c* Interrogative
       - (*a*) Definition
       - (*b*) Uses
       - (*c*) Inflection
     - *d* Relative
       - (*a*) Definition
       - (*b*) Kinds: Simple; Compound in use; Compound in form
       - (*c*) Uses
       - (*d*) Inflection
     - *e* Indefinite
       - (*a*) Definition
       - (*b*) Kinds
         - Basis of form: Simple; Compound
         - Basis of meaning: Distributive; Quantitative; Comparative
       - (*c*) Inflection
3. Properties
   - *a* Gender
   - *b* Person
   - *c* Number
   - *d* Case

   (See nouns)
4. Inflection. (See under kinds) (Declension)
5. Substitutes ———

II. PRONOUNS

Pronoun A pronoun usually stands for either a noun already known, or one inquired for. In any case it is a substitute for the name of a person, place, object, idea. In a sentence it has most of the uses of a noun.

Simple **Compound** According to their form pronouns are either simple or compound. A simple pronoun is traceable to no other word in the language. Compound pronouns are formed by the addition of *self* or *selves* to certain forms of the personal pronoun and to *one*; of *ever* or *soever* to all the forms of the relative pronouns, *who*, *which*, and *what*; and of *one*, *body*, *thing* to the adjectives, *some*, *any*, *no*, and *every*.

Classes On the basis of their meaning pronouns are personal, demonstrative, interrogative, relative, and indefinite.

Personal Personal pronouns distinguish by their form the speaker, or first person, the hearer, or second person, the person or thing spoken of, or third person. They are *I*, *thou*, *he*, *she*, *it*. They agree in gender, person, and number, with the noun for which they stand, and which is called the antecedent. **Agreement**

Inflection The personal pronouns are inflected (declined) for number and case.

		SINGULAR	PLURAL
First person	*Nom.*	I	we
	Poss.	my *or* mine	our *or* ours
	Obj.	me	us
Second person	*Nom.*	thou	you (ye)
	Poss.	thy *or* thine	your *or* yours
	Obj.	thee	you

		SINGULAR	PLURAL
Third person Masc.	*Nom.*	he	
	Poss.	his	
	Obj.	him	
Fem.	*Nom.*	she	they
	Poss.	her *or* hers	their *or* theirs
	Obj.	her	them
Neut.	*Nom.*	it	
	Poss.	its	
	Obj.	it	

Uses

We *We*, with its forms, includes the speaker and any other or others with whom the speaker may be classed. It is also used by sovereigns and editors for the speaker alone.

Thou, ye *Thou*, with its forms, is used only in solemn or poetic style, being replaced in ordinary discourse by the plural *you* and its forms.

He *He* is used not only after a masculine antecedent, but after the indefinite or undetermined antecedents, — *any one*, *no one*, *somebody*, *everybody*, and the like: —

We shall succeed if *every one* will do *his* best.

It *It*, besides referring to a neuter antecedent, or to an antecedent whose gender is not marked, has some special uses: —

Referring to a preceding infinitive, —

To resist was as necessary as *it* was just.

Referring to a succeeding infinitive, —

Special uses *It* is necessary *to go*.

Referring to a preceding clause, —

You will succeed; no one doubts *it.*

Referring to a succeeding clause, —

It is uncertain *when he will come.*

Impersonal subject, —

It rains. How goes *it* with you?

Impersonal object, —

Who can foot *it* farthest?

Compounds

The compound personal pronouns, *myself, thyself, himself, herself, itself, ourself, ourselves, yourself, yourselves, themselves,* have two uses: they are added to a noun or a pronoun to give it emphasis, and are then called emphatic pronouns: —

Emphatic

He *himself* will go. We *ourselves* shall do it.

Reflexive

Or, they are used after transitive verbs, as either direct or indirect objects, sometimes after prepositions, and stand for the same person or thing as the subject. They are then called reflexive pronouns: —

He injures *himself.* We shall not do *ourselves* injury.
Speak for *yourself,* John.

The simple personal pronouns are also used reflexively: —

Haste *thee,* nymph. I sit *me* down. I buy *me* a coat.

Demonstrative The demonstrative pronouns indicate some person or thing that may be pointed to, or that has been already mentioned. They are *this* and *that*.

This *This* designates what is near or just mentioned; *that*, what is more remote or mentioned at another time: —

This is my right hand; *that* is my sergeant.
I will explain *this* now, and *that* later.

That *That* is also used as an absolute antecedent of a relative pronoun, and for a noun that would have to be repeated along with a modifier; and both *this* and *that* occasionally refer to an entire preceding clause: —

That which he wants he will have.
I sold my land and *that* of my brother.
He says he is rich; *this* I doubt.
He paid all his debts; *that* was in his favor.

The demonstrative pronouns have no possessive case. They are declined for number.

Inflection

SINGULAR	PLURAL
this	these
that	those

Substitute For the demonstrative pronouns *this* and *that* after some prepositions, the adverbs *here* and *there* are substituted in compound words: —

*here*after	*here*with	*there*at	*there*on
*here*in	*here*on	*there*in	*there*after

Interrogative Interrogative pronouns are used to introduce questions in both direct and indirect discourse. Direct dis-

course is the thought of the speaker expressed in his own words, whether statement, question, or command. Indirect discourse is reported speech, the thought of another (or of the speaker at another time) expressed in the speaker's words, whether statement, question, or command.

The interrogative pronouns are *who*, *which*, *what*, and in older English, *whether*. **Who**

Who asks for persons, *what* for things, and *which* and *whether* for either persons or things: —

Who was she? He did not know *who* she was.
What blocks the way? Can you tell *what* blocks the way?
Which loves most, father or mother?
Whether is greater, the altar or the gift?

Which differs from *what* in being selective: — **Which** **What**

What will you have? *Which* (of the whole number) will you have?

All the interrogatives are used in the nominative and objective cases, but only *who* in the possessive. *Who* is inflected for case only; the others are not inflected. **Uses**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	who	who
Poss.	whose	whose
Obj.	whom	whom

Inflection

Interrogative pronouns agree in gender and number with the name answering the question. **Agreement**

Relative pronouns not only represent their antecedents, but join to them a modifying clause. The **Relative**

Simple simple relative pronouns are *who*, *which*, *that*, and sometimes *but* and *as*. *What*, though simple in form, has regularly, as *who* has occasionally, a compound use; *i.e.* it includes its own antecedent. *What* is then equivalent to *that which*, and *who* is equivalent to *he who*. *Who* relates to persons, *which* and *what* to lower animals, objects, and ideas, *that* to either persons or things. *As* relates to a noun modified by *such*, *as much*, or *as many;* and *but* is equal to *that* [is . . . does . . .] *not:* —

They *who* love me keep my commandments.
Who (= he who) steals my purse steals trash.
Here is the book for *which* you asked.
They *that* are whole need not a physician.
The rain *that* we prayed for has come.
I see *what* (= that which) frightened you.
Tears such *as* angels weep burst forth.
There is not an officer *but* is valiant and loyal.
There was not a child *but* knew his duty.

Uses The relative pronouns are used as subject, object, predicate-nominative and object of a preposition in the clause which they introduce. *Whose* may be also an adjective modifier. *That*, however, precedes its gov-
Agreement erning preposition. A relative pronoun agrees in gender, person, and number with its antecedent.

None of the relative pronouns is declined for gender or number; but *who* is declined for case like the interrogative *who*.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	who	who
Poss.	whose	whose
Obj.	whom	whom

Inflection

The use of *whose* as the possessive form of *which* is questionable. *Who* and *which* are often used as the equivalents of the conjunction *and* and a personal pronoun; in this case they introduce clauses independent in meaning though dependent in form: — Coördinating

I gave him the bread, *which* (= and it) he ate.
I saw Mr. Smith, *who* (= and he) will visit us to-morrow.

Which sometimes has a clause as its antecedent: —

Cæsar passed the Rubicon, *which* (= and this) meant war.

For an adverbial phrase having as object the relative *which* referring to nouns of time, place, and reason, the adverbs *when*, *where*, and *why* are substituted: —

the day *when* (= on which) he came
the place *where* (= in which) he lay
the reason *why* (= for which) he did it

Substitute

Where is also substituted for *which* and *what* in certain compounds of prepositions: —

*where*on *where*in *where*at *where*by *where*fore

The compound relative pronouns, — also called indefinite relative pronouns, because they include an indefinite antecedent, — are *whoever*, *whosoever*, *whatever*, *whatsoever*, *whichever*, and *whichsoever*. Either they stand as antecedent in the principal clause of a complex sen- Compound

tence and as relative in the subordinate clause, or they introduce clauses used substantively, usually with an adverbial value. They perform all the offices of the simple relatives from which they are formed: —

Whoever (= any one who) gave that counsel was in error.
Whatever he says, he will no longer be believed.

Distinguished from interrogatives

Care must be taken to distinguish between the simple relatives *who*, *which*, and *what*, used indefinitely in substantive clauses, or used as compound pronouns, and the same words used to introduce indirect questions: —

God alone can inspire *whom* he will.
Who steals my purse steals trash.
I wonder *who* is meant.

Indefinite

The indefinite pronouns designating persons or things undefined, — also called adjective pronouns, because many of them are used as adjectives, — are words which from either derivation or use are more like pronouns than like adjectives or nouns. They are the

Classes

distributives, *each*, *either*, *neither*; the quantitatives and numerals, *all*, *any*, *aught*, *both*, *few*, *little*, *many*, *much*, *naught*, *none*, *several*, *one*, *some*; the compounds of *any*, *every*, *no*, and *some* with *body*, *one*, and *thing*; the comparatives *other*, *same*, and *such*.

The personal pronouns *you* and *they* are also used as indefinites: —

You cannot eat your cake and have it too.
They say there will be a wedding to-morrow.

The distributives and compounds are always singular. *All*, *several*, *few*, *many*, and *some*, used as numerals are plural, and the last three, with *little* and *much*, are compared like adjectives; *all*, *little*, *much*, *some*, as quantitatives are singular, and *little*, *much*, and *some* are compared; *none* and *any* are either singular or plural; *one* and *other* are inflected like nouns for number and case. **Number** **Inflection**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	one	ones
Poss.	one's	ones'
Obj.	one	ones
Nom.	other	others
Poss.	other's	others'
Obj.	other	others

Since the indefinite pronouns have no definite antecedent, they have no agreement in gender and number. Their gender and person may sometimes be determined by a personal pronoun, object of a preposition in a phrase modifying them: — **Agreement**

Many of the soldiers died from exposure. *Some* of the women fainted.

The following, — *such*, *the former*, *the latter*, *the one*, *the other*, *the same*, — are often used with the value of demonstrative pronouns. **Substitute**

The parsing of a pronoun includes its kind on various bases, formation, forms, properties, antecedent and agreement, and construction in the sentence. **Parsing**

EXERCISE

Parse the pronouns.

Model. — *I* will tell *you what I* know.

I is a pronoun	*you* is a pronoun	*what* is a pronoun
simple	simple	simple in form, compound in use
personal	personal	relative
either gender	either gender	neuter
first	second	third
singular	plural	singular
nominative	objective, indirect object of verb *will tell*	objective
subject of verb *will tell*	thou	antecedent, object of the verb *will tell*
I	thy thine	relative, object of the verb *know*
my mine	thee	
me	ye you	
we	your yours	
our ours	you	
us		

1. Now I see by thine eyes that this is done,
   Speak out: what is it thou hast heard or seen?

2. Comfort thyself: what comfort is in me?
   I have lived my life, and that which I have done
   May He within himself make pure! But thou,
   If thou shouldst never see my face again,
   Pray for my soul.

3. Look through mine eyes with thine.
   They have not shed a many tears since first I knew them well.
   Love that hath us in the net,
   Can he pass and we forget?

4. Who comes? What does he ask? Which will he take?
   You know who comes; you hear what he asks; you see which of us he takes.

5. "You are that Psyche," Cyril said, "for whom
I would be that forever which I seem,
Woman, if I might sit beside your feet."

6. She founded; they must build.
Here might they learn whatever men were taught;
Let them not fear: some said their heads were less;
Some men's are small.

7. But let your Prince ride with us to our lines
And speak with Arac; Arac's word is thrice
As ours with Ida: Something may be done—
I know not what—and ours shall see us friends.
You likewise, our late guest, if so you will,
Follow us; who knows? we four may build some place
Four square to opposition.

8. Yet, O my friend, I would not have thee die!
Ask me no more, lest I should bid thee live.

9. "What do they call you?" "Katie." "That were strange.
What surname?" "Willows." "No!" "That's my name."

10. Some place their bliss in action, some in ease,
Those call it pleasure, and contentment, these;
Who thus define it, say they more or less
Than this, that happiness is happiness?

11. But fortune's gifts if each alike possessed
And each were equal, must not all contest?

12. But I say unto you that ye resist not evil; but whosoever shall smite thee on thy right cheek, turn to him the other also. Give to him that asketh of thee; and from him that would borrow of thee turn not thou away.

13. Lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust doth corrupt.

(See pages 17–19 for further exercises.)

- ADJECTIVE
  - 1 Definition. Uses
  - 2 Kinds
    - (1) Basis of form
      - *a* Simple
      - *b* Derivative
      - *c* Compound
    - (2) Basis of use
      - *a* Predicate
        - (*a*) Nominative
        - (*b*) Objective
      - *b* Attributive
      - *c* Appositive
        - (*a*) Definition
        - (*b*) Kinds
          - Descriptive
          - Restrictive
        - (*c*) Comparison
          - Inflection
            - Regular
            - Irregular
          - Grouping
    - (3) Basis of meaning
      - *a* Qualifying
        - (*a*) Definition
        - (*b*) Kinds
          - Descriptive
          - Restrictive
        - (*c*) Comparison
          - Inflection
            - Regular
            - Irregular
          - Grouping
      - *b* Pronominal
        - (*a*) Definition
        - (*b*) Kinds
          - Possessive
            - Substantive
            - Adjective
          - Demonstrative
          - Interrogative
          - Relative
          - Indefinite
            - Distributive
            - Quantitative
            - Comparative
      - *c* Numeral
        - (*a*) Definition
        - (*b*) Kinds
        - (*c*) Formation
          - Cardinal
          - Ordinal
          - Fractional
          - Multiplicative
      - *d* Article
        - (*a*) Definition
        - (*b*) Kinds
          - Definite
          - Indefinite
  - 3 Properties
    - *a* Degree (See comparison)
  - 4 Inflection (Comparison)
    - *a* (See qualifying and quantitative)
  - 5 Substitutes
    - Other parts for adjective
      - *a* Noun
      - *b* Adverb
    - Adjectives for
      - *a* Noun
      - *b* Adverb

III. ADJECTIVES

Adjectives are words used along with nouns, pronouns, or other substantive expressions, to modify their meaning or limit their application: — **Adjectives**

The brown, handsome, big young shepherd.

According to their form adjectives are, — simple, not traceable to another word in the language; derivative, formed from other words by prefixes, suffixes, or internal change; compound, made by uniting two or more independent words: — **Kinds Simple, etc.**

A *large, un*tidy, vigor*ous*, *middle*-ag*ed* man stood near.

Proper adjectives are derivatives from proper nouns; participial adjectives are derivatives from verbs: — **Proper Participial**

The *American* people are a *thinking* people.

According to the manner of modifying, or the closeness of their connection with the modified noun or pronoun, adjectives are predicative, attributive, or appositive. An adjective connected with the subject of a sentence by a copulative verb is called a predicate adjective nominative; if connected with the object of a sentence by a factitive verb, the adjective is called predicate objective; if the adjective modifies a noun or pronoun directly, not through a verb, and is closely connected with it in meaning, it is called attributive; if **Predicate** **Factitive** **Attributive**

Note. — Proper adjectives begin with a capital letter.

the adjective is more loosely connected with the word which it modifies, it is called appositive: —

Appositive

Rab is *old, gray, brindled,* as *big* as a little Highland bull.
This will make him *rich* and *happy.*
The *bright* and *fierce little* fellow dropped, limp and dead.
There is a crowd, *annular, compact, mobile.*

Classes

On the basis of their meaning adjectives may be classified as descriptive or qualifying, pronominal, numeral, and the articles.

Qualifying

Descriptive adjectives express a quality, condition, or position. They are either simply descriptive or restrictive, *i.e.* what is said of that designated by the noun or pronoun is true of it only as modified by the adjective: —

The *severe, little, erect* man was *comforted* and *comfortable.*
I put its *keen* edge to the *tense* leather.
A *keen* knife makes a clean wound.
Brave men face the foe.

Most descriptive adjectives are either inflected to express degree, or they are modified by the adverbs *more* and *most* for the same purpose. This inflection, or grouping, is called comparison. Adjectives expressing a quality which can exist only in a positive degree are not compared. Of other adjectives, the form expressing a degree of the quality higher than the positive is called the comparative; and the form expressing the highest degree is called the superlative. Monosyllables and many dissyllables are inflected, *i.e. er* or *r* is added

Comparison

to the positive to form the comparative, and *est* or *st* to form the superlative. Polysyllables regularly prefix *more* and *most*. Degrees less than the positive are sometimes expressed by using *less* and *least* before the adjective, or by suffixing *ish* and *ly*. **Regular**

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE	
tall	taller	tallest	**Examples**
short	shorter	shortest	
wet	wetter	wettest	
sincere	sincerer	sincerest	
able	abler	ablest	
pleasing	more pleasing	most pleasing	
beautiful	more beautiful	most beautiful	
objectionable	less objectionable	least objectionable	
sick	sickish, sickly		

Many adjectives are compared irregularly: —

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE	
bad ill	worse	worst	**Irregular**
far	farther	farthest	
fore	former	foremost	
forth	further	furthest furthermost	

Note. — Adjectives ending in *e* mute drop the *e* before the comparative superlative endings: —

able abler ablest

Adjectives and adverbs ending in *y* change *y* to *i* before the comparative and superlative endings: —

early earlier earliest

Words of one syllable ending in a single consonant preceded by a single vowel (and words of more than one syllable so ending and having the accent on the last syllable) double the final consonant before an added syllable: —

mad madder maddest wet wetter wettest

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
good	better	best
(be)hind	hinder	hindmost
(in)	inner	inmost
late	later latter	latest last
near	nearer	nearest next
nigh	nigher	nighest next
old	older elder	oldest eldest
(out)	outer utter	{ outmost outermost { utmost uttermost
(up)	upper	upmost uppermost
——	under	undermost
——	hither	hithermost
(be)neath	nether	nethermost
well	better	best
northern	——	northernmost
southern	——	southmost

Use of degrees The comparative degree is regularly used when two things are compared; the superlative, when more than two. Many good writers, however, use the superlative in comparing two. Two qualities belonging to the same object are regularly compared by using *more* or *less*:—

He is the *taller* of the two brothers.
She is the *most amiable* of the three sisters.
He is *more* nice than wise.
He is *less* conscientious than politic.

Pronominal Pronominal adjectives are either words derived from pronouns, or words identical with pronouns. They go along with nouns as adjectives, or they stand as pronouns for the words which they modify. They are possessive (personal), demonstrative, interrogative, rela-

tive, and indefinite, like the pronouns from which they are derived.

Most of the possessives have two forms, one used adjectively and the other substantively. They are, — **Possessive**

SINGULAR		PLURAL		**Forms**
Adj.	*Subst.*	*Adj.*	*Subst.*	
my	mine	our	ours	
thy	thine	your	yours	
his	his	their	theirs	
her	hers	their	theirs	
its	its	their	theirs	
whose	whose	whose	whose	

The demonstrative adjectives are *this*, *that*, *yon*, and *yonder*. *This* and *that* are inflected for number, and have the same difference of meaning as adjectives that they have as pronouns. **Demonstrative**

The interrogative adjectives are *which* and *what*. Both are applied to persons as well as things; neither is inflected, and *which* is selective: — **Interrogative**

What boy will not have a gun? *Which* book was lost?

The relative adjectives are *which* and *what*, with their compounds *whichever* (*-soever*) and *whatever* (*-soever*). The compounds are also used as indefinite relatives introducing substantive clauses: — **Relative**

Whatever excuse is offered, they are much to blame.

The simple forms as well as the compound forms may have a double use, including the article *the* and a relative word. Care is needed to distinguish between

the simple relative adjectives and the interrogative adjective in substantive clauses: —

I will accept *what* books (= *the* books *which*) you may bring.

I have asked you frequently *what* books you can bring.

Indefinite The indefinite adjectives include all the indefinite pronouns except the compounds, and have the same classification, — distributives — to which *every* must be added — quantitatives, and comparatives. The quantitatives, *few*, *little*, *many*, *much*, *some*, are thus compared: —

Comparison

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
few	fewer	fewest
little	less	least
many	more	most
much	more	most
some	more	most

Number *Each*, *every*, *either*, *many a*, *neither*, *one*, modify singular nouns only; *any*, *no*, *other*, *same*, *some*, *such*, modify either singular or plural nouns; the others modify plural nouns of number, and singular nouns of quantity or material.

Numeral The numeral adjectives are those used in counting and reckoning. There are four classes, — cardinal, ordinal, fractional, and multiplicative.

Cardinal The cardinals answer the question "How many?" They are sometimes used as collective nouns.

Ordinal The ordinals show the place of anything in a series. They are made, except *first*, *second*, *third*, and com-

pounds of these, by adding the suffix *th* to the cardinals: —

fifth *sixth* *eighth* *twenty-fourth*

Fractional

The fractionals designate one or more of the equal parts of a unit. The parts are denoted by the ordinals; the number taken, by the cardinals: —

three fourths *ten elevenths*

Multiplicative

The multiplicatives designate how many times a thing is taken, or by what number it is multiplied. They are made by adding the word *fold*, to the cardinals: — two*fold* four*fold*

The words *simple*, *double*, *triple*, *quadruple*, etc., are also multiplicatives.

Article

Definite

Indefinite

The articles are the words *the* and *a* (*an* before a vowel sound). *The* is called the definite article, and stands before a noun used in a restricted sense. *A* is called the indefinite article, and stands before a noun in a general sense, and only in the singular.

Substitutes

Nouns denoting material, time, and place, and adverbs of time and place are sometimes used with the force of adjectives. Adjectives are sometimes used with the force of adverbs, and frequently with the value of nouns: —

a *gold* watch a *morning* shower a *city* residence
the *then* monarch the mountains *there* sounding *clear*
the *good* and the *great*

Parsing

The parsing of an adjective includes the kind on different bases, formation, forms if compared, and its construction in the sentence.

EXERCISE

Parse the adjectives.

Model. — *The* lady is *dead* upon *my fearful* accusation.

The is an adjective
article
definite
limiting lady

Dead is an adjective
simple
qualifying
descriptive
predicative
modifying lady

My is an adjective
simple
possessive
limiting accusation

Fearful is an adjective
derivative, noun *fear* + suffix *ful*
qualifying
descriptive
attributive
positive
qualifying accusation
fearful more fearful most fearful

1. My hair is gray, but not with years,
Nor grew it white, in a single night.

2. I was the eldest of the three;
And to uphold and cheer the rest
I ought to do, and did my best.

3. The last, the sole, the dearest link,
Between me and the eternal brink,
Which bound me to my failing race,
Was broken in this fatal place.

4. Her maiden eyes divine,
Fixed on the floor, saw many a sweeping train
Pass by — she heeded not at all; in vain
Came many a tiptoe, amorous cavalier,
And back retired, not cooled by high disdain.

5. I could a tale unfold whose lightest word
Would harrow up thy soul, freeze thy young blood,
Make thy two eyes like stars start from their spheres,
Thy knotted and combined locks to part,
And each particular hair to stand on end.

6. In which predicament, I say, thou standest;
For it appears, by manifest proceeding
That, indirectly and directly, too,
Thou hast contrived against the very life
Of the defendant.

7. Together, both ere the high lawns appeared
Under the opening eyelids of the morn,
We drove afield, and both together heard
What time the gray-fly winds her sultry horn,
Battening our flocks with the fresh dews of night.

8. Four hundred trumpets sounded
A peal of warlike glee,
As that great host, with measured tread,
And spears advanced, and ensigns spread,
Rolled slowly towards the bridge's head,
Where stood the dauntless three.

9. Long lines of cliff breaking have left a chasm;
And in the chasm are foam and yellow sands;
Beyond, red roofs about a narrow wharf,
In cluster; then a mouldered church; and higher
A long street climbs to one tall-towered mill;
And high in heaven behind it a gray down
With Danish barrows; and a hazel-wood,
By autumn nutters haunted, flourishes
Green in a cuplike hollow of the down.

10. Alas! What boots it with incessant care
To tend the homely slighted shepherd's trade,
And strictly meditate the thankless muse?

11. In him woke
With his first babe's first cry the noble wish
To save all earnings to the uttermost,
And give this child a better bringing-up
Than his had been, or hers.

12. They chained us each to a column stone,
And we were three — yet each alone;
We could not move a single pace,
We could not see each other's face,
But with that pale and livid light
That made us strangers in our sight.

13. Will Wimble's is the case of many a younger brother of a great family, who had rather see their children starve like gentlemen, than thrive in a trade or profession that is beneath their quality. This humor fills several parts of Europe with pride and beggary. It is the happiness of a trading nation like ours that the younger sons, though incapable of any liberal art or profession, may be placed in such a way of life as may perhaps enable them to vie with the best of their family. Accordingly, we find several citizens that were launched into the world with narrow fortunes, rising by an honest industry to greater estates than those of their elder brothers. It is not improbable but Will was formerly tried at divinity, law, or physic; and that, finding his genius did not lie that way, his parents gave him up at length to his own inventions. But certainly, however improper he might have been for studies of a higher nature, he was perfectly well turned for the occupation of trade and commerce.

14. Fain would I pause to dwell upon the world of charms that burst upon the enraptured gaze of my hero, as he entered the state parlor of Van Tassel's mansion. Not those of the bevy of buxom lasses, with their luxurious display of red and white; but the ample charms of a genuine Dutch country tea-table, in the sumptuous time of autumn. Such heaped-up platters of cakes of various and almost indescribable kinds, known only to experienced Dutch housewives! There was the doughty doughnut, the tender olykoek, and the crisp and crumbling cruller; sweet cakes and short cakes, ginger cakes and honey cakes, and the whole family of cakes. And then there were apple pies, and peach pies, and pumpkin pies; besides slices of ham and smoked beef; and moreover delectable dishes of preserved plums, and peaches, and pears, and quinces; not to mention broiled shad and roasted chickens; together with bowls of milk and cream, all mingled higgledy-piggledy, pretty much as I have enumerated them, with the motherly teapot sending up its clouds of vapor from the midst — Heaven bless the mark! I want breath and time to discuss this banquet as it deserves, and am too eager to get on with my story. Happily, Ichabod Crane was not in so great a hurry as his historian, but did ample justice to every dainty.

VERB

1. Definition. Uses
2. Kinds
   - (1) Basis of form
     - *a* Simple
     - *b* Derivative
     - *c* Compound
   - (2) Basis of meaning
     - *a* Transitive
     - *b* Intransitive
     - *c* Copulative
   - (3) Basis of Prin. Parts
     - *a* Old Conj.
     - *b* New Conj.

     → (*a*) Regular; (*b*) Irregular; (*c*) Redundant; (*d*) Defective
   - (4) Basis of use
     - *a* Principal
     - *b* Auxiliary for

     → (*a*) Voice; (*b*) Mood; (*c*) Tense; (*d*) Form of Conjugation
   - (5) Basis of kind of subject
     - *a* Personal
     - *b* Impersonal (Unipersonal)
3. Properties
   - *a* Voice → (*a*) Active; (*b*) Passive
   - *b* Mood
     - Finite → (*a*) Indicative; (*b*) Subjunctive; (*c*) Conditional; (*d*) Potential; (*e*) Obligative; (*f*) Imperative
     - Indefinite → (*a*) Infinitive; (*b*) Participle
   - *c* Tense → (*a*) Present; (*b*) Present Perfect; (*c*) Past; (*d*) Past Perfect; (*e*) Future; (*f*) Future Perfect
   - *d* Person → (*a*) First; (*b*) Second; (*c*) Third
   - *e* Number → (*a*) Singular; (*b*) Plural
   - *f* Form of Conj. → (*a*) Simple; (*b*) Emphatic; (*c*) Progressive
4. Inflection (Conjugation)
   - *a* Methods → (*a*) Change of form; (*b*) Grouping
   - *b* Elements → (*a*) Stem; (*b*) Personal endings; (*c*) Tense signs; (*d*) Mood signs; (*e*) Form signs; (*f*) Voice signs — (*d*), (*e*), (*f*): (Auxiliaries)

IV. VERBS

Verbs are words expressing action, being, or condition. The expression takes the form of assertion (or assumption), question, command, or exclamation: — **Verb**

We *go*. We *are*. We *thrive*. *Go* thou. Do we *thrive?*

According to their form, verbs are simple, derivative, compound: simple, when traceable to no other word in the language; derivative, when made from other words by prefix, suffix, internal change; compound, when made by the union of two or more independent words: — **Simple, etc.**

come do be *be*come *un*do *out*do *wel*come

According to their meaning, verbs are intransitive, transitive, and copulative. An intransitive verb is a verb of complete predication. It expresses sometimes an action not terminating on an object, sometimes a condition or existence: — **Classes** **Complete** **Transitive**

I *walk* I *live* I *weaken* I *exist*

Transitive verbs and copulative verbs are verbs of incomplete predication. **Incomplete**

A transitive verb expresses an action terminating on an object: —

The hunter *kills* the *deer*. The boy *caught* the *ball*.

A copulative verb connects a modifying noun, pronoun, or adjective, or an equivalent, with the subject of the sentence: — **Copulative**

These soldiers *are Spaniards*. Men *are mortal*.
You *seem cheerful*.

Reflexive A reflexive verb is a transitive verb taking as its object a pronoun representing the same person or thing as the subject: —

The boy *has hurt himself.* Most men *love themselves.*

Factitive A factitive verb is a transitive verb connecting with its object a noun, pronoun, or adjective modifier: —

They *paint* the barn *red.* We shall *choose* him *captain.*

Old conjugation According to the way they form their principal parts, verbs are of the old conjugation, or of the new conjugation. The principal parts of a verb are the root infinitive, which is the simplest form of the verb, the simple past tense, and the past participle. These are called principal parts, because from them is formed, by means of personal endings, tense signs, and auxiliaries, the complete scheme of conjugation.

Regular A regular verb of the old conjugation forms its past tense and past participle from the infinitive by a change in the root vowel for one or both, sometimes adding *n* or *en* to the participle: —

give gave given *tear tore torn* *sing sang sung*

Irregular An irregular verb of the old conjugation forms its derived principal parts from the infinitive by some change in addition to the change of vowel and the addition of *n* or *en* to the participle: —

do did done *stand stood stood*
be was been *go went gone*

New conjugation

Regular

A regular verb of the new conjugation forms its past tense and past participle from the root infinitive by adding *d* or *ed*: —

live lived lived *work worked worked*

rap rapped rapped

Irregular

An irregular verb of the new conjugation forms its derived principal parts by some change in addition to, or differing from, the adding of *d* or *ed* to the infinitive: —

sell sold sold *teach taught taught*

Mixed

Some verbs form one of their derived principal parts according to the old and the other according to the new conjugation: —

crow crew crowed *show showed shown*

Both

Some verbs formerly of the old conjugation now belong to the new; and some verbs now form principal parts according to both the old and the new conjugation: —

hang hanged or *hung hanged* or *hung*

thrive thrived or *throve thrived* or *thriven*

Redundant

A redundant verb forms its derived principal parts in more than one way: —

cleave cleaved or *cleft* or *clove* or *clave*

cleaved or *cleft* or *cloven*

Note. — Verbs of one syllable ending in a single consonant preceded by a single vowel (and verbs of more than one syllable so ending and accented on the last syllable), double the final consonant before an added syllable: — rap*ped* pat*ted* slid*den* got*ten* rap*ping* pat*ting* get*ting*

Verbs ending in *e* add *d* only. Verbs ending in *y* preceded by a consonant change *y* to *i* before the ending *ed*: — carry, carr*ied*.

Defective A defective verb lacks one or more of its principal parts. The verbs used only as auxiliaries are of this class.

Principal Auxiliary On the basis of their use or importance in combinations of verb forms, verbs are principal or auxiliary. The principal verb expresses the chief meaning; the auxiliaries indicate the grammatical properties of voice, mood, tense, and form of conjugation. The principal verb appears throughout the conjugation in the form of the root infinitive with or without a personal ending, or a past tense with or without personal ending, or an infinitive or participle following an auxiliary. The auxiliary verbs are: —

be can do have may must need ought shall will

Personal Verbs expressing action, being, or condition of a definite person or thing are called personal verbs: —

Rain *falls* Snow *flies*

Impersonal Verbs expressing action, being, or condition of something general or indefinite, and either having for grammatical subject the pronoun *it*, or having no subject at all expressed, are called impersonal verbs: —

It *snows* It *is* sunrise It *grows* dark Me*seems*
As *regards* As *concerns* If you *please*

Properties The grammatical properties of the verb are voice, mood, tense, person, number, and form of conjugation.

Voice Voice denotes the relation of the subject to the action expressed by the verb. A verb in the active voice expresses an action as performed by the subject: —

Active Cain *killed* Abel. The angel *stirred* the pool.

A verb in the passive voice expresses an action received by the subject: —

Abel *was killed* by Cain. **Passive**
The pool *was stirred* by the angel.

It will be seen that the object of the verb in the active voice becomes its subject in the passive voice.

Only verbs expressing action have voice. As the passive voice is made in English by the use of the auxiliary *be* and the passive participle, what is said either of changes in the form of verbs or of grouping with auxiliaries for mood and tense, cannot apply to the principal verb in the passive voice, but to the auxiliary. The same is true of verbs in the progressive form of conjugation. **Formation**

Mood denotes the manner of conceiving and expressing action, being, or condition. Inflection for mood has nearly disappeared from the English language; but the term "mood" has been retained to designate those variations in meaning expressed by verb phrases analogous to the moods of other languages. **Mood**

The indicative mood is the mood of simple assertion or question. It assumes reality: — **Indicative**

The harvest *is* plenteous but the laborers *are* few.
What *will* the harvest *be?*
If I *was* ever *taught* to read, I *do* not *remember* it.
And though on pleasure she *was bent*
She *had* a frugal mind.

The subjunctive mood differs regularly in form from the indicative in dropping all personal endings. Its **Subjunctive**

use implies doubt, uncertainty, a mere conception opposed to fact. It may express: —

General condition or supposition, —

Uses

If the third of six *be* three,
What will the fourth of twenty be?

Condition contrary to fact, —

If this *were* true (as it is not), I should go.
If I *had* another bottle (as I have not), or if I *had* not *broken* this (as I have), I should conclude the experiment (as I shall not).

Conclusion after an uncertain condition, —

If it *were done* when it is done, then it *were* well.

Conclusion in a clause of result or purpose, —

Hadst thou been here my brother *had* not *died* (as he did).
See that thou *delay* not.

Concession, —

Though he *slay* me, yet will I trust him.
Be this as you say, I shall still refuse.
However carefully he *choose*, he will wish he had chosen differently.

A wish in an independent clause, — (Greek optative)

The Lord *judge* between thee and me.
Somebody *call* my wife.

A wish in a dependent clause, —

O that he *were* here!
I could wish thou *wert* my father.
She wished that heaven *had made* her such a man.

An indirect question, —

Whether he *were* angry or ill none could tell.
Do you ask if there *be* no greater?

A command or exhortation, —

Now *tread* we a measure.

Substantive clause after *that* and *whether*, —

The first requisite is that he *be* trustworthy.
We asked whether he *were* faithful.

Indicative or subjunctive

The subjunctive past — except the verb *be* — differs from the indicative only in the second person singular, which is seldom used in modern English. Whether, therefore, a past or a past perfect tense is to be called subjunctive or indicative depends on its use.

Conditional

The conditional mood (or verb phrase), formed by the past of *shall* (*should*) and *will* (*would*) with an infinitive, expresses a conclusion dependent on a provision. It may also be used in the provisional clause, but generally only with *should*: —

I *should go* if I could get away.
He *would be* generous if he had money.
Should he *come*, we shall see him.
If we *should conclude* to leave, we will advise you.

Uses of *should*

The form with *should* expresses also purpose, obligation, necessity, or duty: —

He ran with all his might, lest his pursuers *should overtake* him.
He *should pay* his debts, but he seems unwilling to do so.
I said that he *should* pay his debts.

Uses of *would* The form with *would* expresses also determination and customary action: —

He *would* pay the bill; nothing *could* hinder him.
Then he *would* sit down and weep.

The conditional mood is frequently used interchangeably with the subjunctive.

Potential The potential mood (or verb phrase), formed with both tenses of *may* and *can* (sometimes with *shall* and *will*), and an infinitive, asserts something, or inquires after something as possible, probable, permissible, determined, or desired: —

He *may be* elected.
He *could have had* his way.
It *may rain* or it *may snow*.
You *may withdraw* till you are summoned.
Thou *shalt* not *steal*; thou *shalt* not *kill*.
May the Lord's will *be* done.
O that I *might find* him!

Uses The potential mood (or verb phrase) is also used in clauses of purpose: —

The man leaves that he *may* not *be* arrested.
He studied diligently that he *might* not *fail*.

Obligative The obligative mood (or verb phrase), formed with *must*, *ought*, *need* (sometimes with *should*), and an infinitive, expresses duty or necessity: —

Ye *must be* born again.
Men *ought to provide* first for their own families.
No man *need suffer*.
Ye *should have put* my money to the exchangers.

The imperative mood expresses a command, entreaty, or exhortation. It is in form like the root infinitive. Its subject is usually omitted: — Imperative

Go to the ant, thou sluggard; *consider* her ways and *be* wise.
Go ye into all the world and *preach* the gospel.
Let us have peace.

Note. — Some of the difficulties in the way of satisfactorily classifying the moods of the English verb are: —

The loss of inflection for mood;

The use, to express mood, of auxiliaries which have lost their inflection, which have changed tense, and which are used with different meanings;

The interchange of different forms and combinations to express the same manner of conception;

The independent and the auxiliary use of the same verbs;

The shading of tense-phrases and mood-phrases into one another.

The effort has been made to simplify the matter by limiting moods to the *indicative*, the *subjunctive*, and the *imperative*. What are here called mood-phrases are then resolved into expressions containing an independent verb indicative or subjunctive according to the conception of the action expressed, as fact or as only thought of, and a modifying infinitive.

While this treatment is correct, considered historically, it presents obvious objections as the language appears to-day. The analogy with tense-phrases is not followed, — *I shall go* and *I must go* are like constructions; the grammar and the logic of expression are brought into conflict; *i.e.* the principal grammatical element is the subordinate logical element; and the real meaning will be apparent to only students of historic English or of general linguistics.

It has seemed best, therefore, to retain the potential mood, or mood-phrase, — which is convenient, and "in most cases adds a distinct notion of power in some form," — and to put alongside this the analogous conditional and obligative mood-phrases, as suggested by Professor Whitney (*Essentials of English Grammar*, 120–122), and as practically adopted in Professor Sweet's classification (*New English Grammar*, Part I., 108 ff.; Part II., 110 ff.). This treatment, while not without objections, harmonizes the logic and grammar of the expressions, easily and sensibly disposes of anomalous verbs, follows the analogy of tense-phrases, and completes a scheme of conjugation more nearly like that of other languages.

Verbals The infinitives and participles are not definite moods, but forms of the verb which, while retaining their verb nature, perform also the office of nouns and adjectives respectively. They, together with the past tense, form the principal parts of the verb. They are also used in the general scheme of the verb along with auxiliaries of voice, mood, tense, and form of conjugation.

Infinitives The infinitive is a verbal noun naming the action, being, or condition which the finite verb asserts. There are two simple present infinitives. One is the simplest form of the verb, hence called the root infinitive, and is sometimes used with the preposition *to* and sometimes without it: —

Root

be	*do*	*go*	*see*
to be	*to do*	*to go*	*to see*
come	*stay*	*kill*	
to come	*to sta*	*to kill*	

Participial The other ends in *ing*, and hence is called the participial infinitive: —

being	*going*	*coming*	*killing*
doing	*seeing*	*staying*	

Participles There are also two simple participles. One, ending in *ing*, is called the present participle because it expresses action, being, or condition either present absolutely or present with reference to the time indicated by another word: —

Present

being	*going*	*coming*	*killing*
doing	*seeing*	*staying*	

Note. — Verbs ending in mute *e* drop this vowel before the ending *ing*: —

lov*ing* rid*ing* writ*ing* commenc*ing* engag*ing*

But, sing*ing*, to distinguish it from the participle of *sing*.

The other simple participle ends in *d*, *ed*, *t*, *n*, or *en*, or has no ending. It is called the past participle because it indicates action, being, or condition completed; it is also called the passive participle because in some uses it indicates the action as endured or suffered: — **Past**

been *done* *gone* *seen* *come* *stayed* *killed*

Tense is a distinction as to the time alone, or the time and the completion of the action, being, or condition. The indicative mood has six tenses: two, the present and the past, are expressed by single words in the simple form of conjugation; and four are expressed by combining the infinitive or the past participle with auxiliaries. The use of the tenses of the indicative is fairly definite. **Tense of indicative**

The present tense indicates the action, being, or condition as occurring at the present time; the present perfect, as completed at the present time: — **Present**

I *sing* I *have sung*

The past tense indicates the action, being, or condition as occurring in past time; the past perfect, as completed in past time: — **Past**

I *sang* I *had sung*

The future tense indicates the action, being, or condition as occurring in future time; the future perfect, as completed in future time: — **Future**

you *will sing* you *will have sung*

Simple compound

The present, past, and future are called simple tenses, as they express action with reference to time only; the perfect tenses are called compound, as they indicate the completion of the action as well as the time.

Tenses of other moods

The subjunctive and potential moods lack the future and future perfect tenses. Both the past and present perfect tenses are used with a present and even a future meaning. The conditional, obligative, and infinitive have only the present and perfect tenses. In all of these moods, the present tense is used to express present and future time, and the perfect tense is used to express past, present, or even future time. The past perfect expresses either a simple past time, or this with completed action. The time of the action, being, or condition expressed by a subordinate clause or by infinitives and participial phrases, is usually determined by the tense of the principal verb of the sentence. On the other hand, the time of the principal verb is sometimes indicated by the infinitive following it.

The imperative has only the present used with a future as well as a present meaning. The participles and infinitives, though present or perfect in form, have really no tense, the time implied in them being relative to the words on which they depend, or which accompany them.

Note. — The present is used for general or timeless statements, and for making narrative of past events vivid; some familiar verbs use the present for stating an expected future event.

There is also a periphrastic future formed by adding the root infinitive to the verb *to be*:—

I *am to go* he *is to tell* us about it

Person is a distinction of the verb with reference to the subject. Verbs are in the first, second, or third person, according to the character of the subject, as speaker, listener, or person or thing spoken of. **Person**

Number, also, is a distinction of the verb with reference to the subject. A verb is singular if its subject represents a single person or thing; plural, if its subject stands for more than a single person or thing. In modern English, the second plural pronoun with its corresponding verb is used also for the singular. **Number**

In addition to the simple form of conjugation, expressing without emphasis or reference to continuance, the action, being, or state, the present and past tenses of both the indicative and the subjunctive and the one tense of the imperative have an emphatic form. The name sufficiently indicates the meaning: — **Form of conjugation** **Simple** **Emphatic**

I *do love* I *did love*

All the tenses of the finite moods have also a progressive form expressing continuance of action, being, or condition: — **Progressive**

I *was giving* he *was dying*

Conjugation is either a change in the form of a verb, or the combination of a verb with other verbs, to express its grammatical properties. The term is also applied to the entire scheme of changes and combinations of a single verb. **Conjugation**

There are but few changes of form — inflections — in the English verb. Verbs regularly change from the **Inflection**

infinitive to make the past tense and participles. In the present indicative, whether the verb is used independently or as an auxiliary, *(e)st* is added to the infinitive to form the second person singular, and *(e)s*, old style *(e)th*, to form the third person singular: —

Personal endings

I love	we love	I write	we write
thou love*st*	you love	thou writ*est*	you write
he love*s* (*th*)	they love	he writ*es* (*eth*)	they write

Past tense sign

In the past indicative verbs of the old conjugation have a vowel change; verbs of the new, a tense ending *(e)d*. Only the second singular takes the personal ending: —

I lov*ed*	we lov*ed*	I wr*o*te	we wr*o*te
thou lov*edst*	you lov*ed*	thou wr*o*te*st*	you wr*o*te
he lov*ed*	they lov*ed*	he wr*o*te	they wr*o*te

Grouping for future

The future indicative is formed by adding the root infinitives to the verbs *shall*, for the first person, and *will*, for the second and third person, these verbs being irregularly inflected: —

I *shall* love	we *shall* love
thou *wilt* love	you *will* love
he *will* love	they *will* love

Note. — But in questions the auxiliary *shall* is used for both first and second person: —

Shall you come to-morrow? *Shall* I come to-morrow?

Shall is used in a question in the third person, if expected in the answer: —

Shall mortal man forget his Maker?

The following are all the different forms of a regular verb: — **All verb forms**

		1st sing. (like inf.)	2nd sing.	3rd sing.	participles
New:	Pres.	*love*	*lovest*	*loves* (*loveth*)	*loving*
Old:		*give*	*givest*	*gives* (*giveth*)	*giving*
New:	Past	*loved*	*lovedst*		*loved*
Old:		*gave*	*gavest*		*given*

The present and past tenses of the subjunctive omit the personal endings found in the indicative. The imperative is like the infinitive in form. Like the future indicative, the perfect tenses of the indicative and subjunctive and all the tenses of all the other finite moods are made by combining verb forms, — either adding the root infinitive or a participle, or both, to auxiliary verbs. The passive voice (or passive verb phrase) is formed by adding the past participle to the verb *be* throughout its conjugation: — **Subjunctive** **Imperative** **Verb groups** **Passive**

I *am* loved — I *shall be* loved
I *was* loved — If I *be* loved

The conditional mood (or verb phrase), present, is formed by adding the present infinitive to the past of *shall* and *will* — *should* for the first person, *would* for the second and third: — **Conditional**

I *should* go — they *would* go

The potential mood (or verb phrase) is formed in the simple tenses, by adding the infinitive to the present and past of the verbs *may* and *can*, and sometimes to **Potential**

the present of the verb *shall* for the second and third persons, and of *will* for the first person, and to the past tense *would* for all persons:—

I *may* go thou *couldst* go we *will* go

Obligative The obligative mood (or verb phrase), present, is formed by adding the infinitive to the verbs *must*, *ought*, and *need:*—

we *must* sing they *ought* to sing

Perfect tenses All perfect tenses, not only of finite moods, but of infinitives and participles, are formed by adding the past participle to the corresponding form — mood, tense, form of conjugation — of the verb *have*. A few intransitive verbs of motion or condition still use *be* as perfect auxiliary:—

I *have* sung	*to have* sung
I *shall have* sung	*having* sung
I *am* come	I *was* fallen

Emphatic The emphatic form of conjugation is made by adding the infinitive to the present and past tenses of *do:*—

I *do* sing I *did* sing

Progressive The progressive form of conjugation adds the present participle to the verb *be* throughout its conjugation:—

I *am* singing I *have been* singing I *may be* singing

Conjugation of auxiliaries The conjugation of the auxiliary verbs is irregular, and some of the auxiliaries are defective. *Shall*, *will*, *may*, *can*, *must*, *ought*, lack infinitives and participles; the first four have a present and a past tense, the last two only a present.

Shall *Shall*

PRESENT

I shall	we shall
thou shalt	you shall
he shall	they shall

PAST

I should	we should
thou shouldst	you should
he should	they should

Will *Will*

PRESENT

I will	we will
thou wilt	you will
he will	they will

PAST

I would	we would
thou wouldst	you would
he would	they would

May *May*

PRESENT

I may	we may
thou mayest	you may
he may	they may

PAST

I might	we might
thou might(e)st	you might
he might	they might

Can *Can*

PRESENT

I can	we can
thou canst	you can
he can	they can

PAST

I could	we could
thou couldst	you could
he could	they could

Must

Must

PRESENT

I must	we must
thou must	you must
he must	they must

Ought

Ought

PRESENT

I ought	we ought
thou oughtest	you ought
he ought	they ought

Must and *ought* may be considered past tenses when followed by a perfect infinitive and used in a connection indicating past time.

The auxiliary verbs *be*, *have*, and *do*, in addition to their use as auxiliaries, have an independent use and a complete conjugation.

Be

Be

PRINCIPAL PARTS

be	was	being	been

Indicative

PRESENT

I am	we are
thou art	you are
he is	they are

PAST

I was	we were
thou wast	you were
he was	they were

FUTURE

I shall be	we shall be
thou wilt be	you will be
he will be	they will be

PRESENT PERFECT

I have been	we have been
thou hast been	you have been
he has been	they have been

PAST PERFECT

I had been	we had been
thou hadst been	you had been
he had been	they had been

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have been	we shall have been
thou wilt have been	you will have been
he will have been	they will have been

(Notice that in the compound tenses of the indicative mood the *indicative* of *have* is used.)

Subjunctive

PRESENT

I be	we we
thou be (beest)	you be
he be	they be

PAST

I were	we were
thou were (wert)	you were
he were	they were

PRESENT PERFECT

I have been	we have been
thou have been	you have been
he have been	they have been

PAST PERFECT

I had been	we had been
thou had been	you had been
he had been	they had been

(Notice that in the compound tenses of the subjunctive the *subjunctive* of *have* is used; and so of other moods.)

Conditional

PRESENT

I should be	we should be
thou wouldst be	you would be
he would be	they would be

PAST OR PERFECT

I should have been	we should have been
thou wouldst have been	you would have been
he would have been	they would have been

Potential

(This may be conjugated with either *may* or *can* as auxiliary throughout, or with *will* for first person, and *shall* second and third, present, and *will* for all persons in the past.)

PRESENT

I may be	we may be
thou mayest be	you may be
he may be	they may be

PAST

I might be	we might be
thou mightst be	you might be
he might be	they might be

PRESENT PERFECT

I may have been	we may have been
thou mayest have been	you may have been
he may have been	they may have been

PAST PERFECT

I might have been	we might have been
thou mightst have been	you might have been
he might have been	they might have been

Obligative

(This may be conjugated with *must*, *ought*, or *need*—sometimes *should*—as auxiliary.)

PRESENT

I must be	we must be
thou must be	you must be
he must be	they must be

PAST OR PERFECT

I must have been	we must have been
thou must have been	you must have been
he must have been	they must have been

(*Ought* requires *to* with the infinitive; *need* takes the infinitive either with *to* or without it.)

Imperative

PRESENT

be (thou) be (you)

Infinitives

PRESENT

ROOT	PARTICIPIAL
(to) be	being

PERFECT

(to) have been	having been

Participles

PRESENT	PAST	PERFECT
being	been	having been

Have

Have

PRINCIPAL PARTS

have	had	having	had

Active, Indicative

PRESENT

I have	we have
thou hast	you have
he has	they have

PAST

I had	we had
thou hadst	you had
he had	they had

FUTURE

I shall have	we shall have
thou wilt have	you will have
he will have	they will have

PRESENT PERFECT

I have had	we have had
thou hast had	you have had
he has had	they have had

PAST PERFECT

I had had	we had had
thou hadst had	you had had
he had had	they had had

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have had	we shall have had
thou wilt have had	you will have had
he will have had	they will have had

Subjunctive

PRESENT

I have	we have
thou have	you have
he have	they have

PAST

I had	we had
thou had	you had
he had	they had

PRESENT PERFECT

I have had	we have had
thou have had	you have had
he have had	they have had

PAST PERFECT

I had had	we had had
thou had had	you had had
he had had	they had had

Conditional

PRESENT

I should have	we should have
thou wouldst have	you would have
he would have	they would have

PAST OR PERFECT

I should have had	we should have had
thou wouldst have had	you would have had
he would have had	they would have had

Potential

PRESENT

I may have	we may have
thou mayest have	you may have
he may have	they may have

PAST

I might have	we might have
thou mightst have	you might have
he might have	they might have

PRESENT PERFECT

I may have had	we may have had
thou mayest have had	you may have had
he may have had	they may have had

PAST PERFECT

I might have had	we might have had
thou mightst have had	you might have had
he might have had	they might have had

Obligative

PRESENT

I must have	we must have
thou must have	you must have
he must have	they must have

PAST OR PERFECT

I must have had	we must have had
thou must have had	you must have had
he must have had	they must have had

Imperative

PRESENT

have (thou)	have (you)

Infinitives

PRESENT

ROOT	PARTICIPIAL
(to) have	having

PERFECT

(to) have had	having had

Participles

PRESENT	PAST	PERFECT
having	had	having had

Do *Do*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

do	did	doing	done

Active, Indicative

PRESENT

I do	we do
thou dost	you do
he does	they do

PAST

I did	we did
thou didst	you did
he did	they did

FUTURE

I shall do	we shall do
thou wilt do	you will do
he will do	they will do

PRESENT PERFECT

I have done	we have done
thou hast done	you have done
he has done	they have done

PAST PERFECT

I had done	we had done
thou hadst done	you had done
he had done	they had done

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have done	we shall have done
thou wilt have done	you will have done
he will have done	they will have done

Subjunctive

PRESENT

I do	we do
thou do	you do
he do	they do

PAST

I did	we did
thou did	you did
he did	they did

PRESENT PERFECT

I have done	we have done
thou have done	you have done
he have done	they have done

PAST PERFECT

I had done	we had done
thou had done	you had done
he had done	they had done

Conditional

PRESENT

I should do	we should do
thou wouldst do	you would do
he would do	they would do

PAST OR PERFECT

I should have done	we should have done
thou wouldst have done	you would have done
he would have done	they would have done

Potential

PRESENT

I may do	we may do
thou mayest do	you may do
he may do	they may do

PAST

I might do	we might do
thou mightst do	you might do
he might do	they might do

PRESENT PERFECT

I may have done	we may have done
thou mayest have done	you may have done
he may have done	they may have done

PAST PERFECT

I might have done	we might have done
thou mightst have done	you might have done
he might have done	they might have done

Obligative

PRESENT

I must do	we must do
thou must do	you must do
he must do	they must do

PAST OR PERFECT

I must have done	we must have done
thou must have done	you must have done
he must have done	they must have done

Imperative

PRESENT

do (thou)	do (you)

PERFECT

(have done)	(have done)

Infinitives

PRESENT

ROOT	PARTICIPIAL
(to) do	doing

PERFECT

(to) have done	having done

Participles

PRESENT	PAST	PERFECT
doing	done	having done

COMPLETE CONJUGATION OF *LOVE*

(A regular verb of the new conjugation)

Love active

Active Voice

SIMPLE FORM	PROGRESSIVE	EMPHATIC
	Indicative	
	PRESENT	
I love	I am loving	I do love
thou lovest	thou art loving	thou dost love
he loves (th)	he is loving	he does (th) love
we love	we are loving	we do love
you love	you are loving	you do love
they love	they are loving	they do love
	PAST	
I loved	I was loving	I did love
thou lovedst	thou wast loving	thou didst love
he loved	he was loving	he did love
we loved	we were loving	we did love
you loved	you were loving	you did love
they loved	they were loving	they did love
	FUTURE	
I shall love	I shall be loving	
thou wilt love	thou wilt be loving	
he will love	he will be loving	
we shall love	we shall be loving	
you will love	you will be loving	
they will love	they will be loving	
	PRESENT PERFECT	
I have loved	I have been loving	
thou hast loved	thou hast been loving	
he has loved	he has been loving	

SIMPLE FORM	PROGRESSIVE	EMPHATIC
	PRESENT PERFECT — *Continued*	
we have loved	we have been loving	
you have loved	you have been loving	
they have loved	they have been loving	
	PAST PERFECT	
I had loved	I had been loving	
thou hadst loved	thou hadst been loving	
he had loved	he had been loving	
we had loved	we had been loving	
you had loved	you had been loving	
they had loved	they had been loving	
	FUTURE PERFECT	
I shall have loved	I shall have been loving	
thou wilt have loved	thou wilt have been loving	
he will have loved	he will have been loving	
we shall have loved	we shall have been loving	
you will have loved	you will have been loving	
they will have loved	they will have been loving	
	Subjunctive	
	PRESENT	
I love	I be loving	I do love
thou love	thou be (est) loving	thou do love
he love	he be loving	he do love
we love	we be loving	we do love
you love	you be loving	you do love
they love	they be loving	they do love
	PAST	
I loved	I were loving	I did love
thou loved	thou were (t) loving	thou did love
he loved	he were loving	he did love

SIMPLE FORM	PROGRESSIVE	EMPHATIC
	PAST — *Continued*	
we loved	we were loving	we did love
you loved	you were loving	you did love
they loved	they were loving	they did love
	PRESENT PERFECT	
I have loved	I have been loving	
thou have loved	thou have been loving	
he have loved	he have been loving	
we have loved	we have been loving	
you have loved	you have been loving	
they have loved	they have been loving	
	PAST PERFECT	
I had loved	I had been loving	
thou had loved	thou had been loving	
he had loved	he had been loving	
we had loved	we had been loving	
you had loved	you had been loving	
they had loved	they had been loving	
	Conditional	
	PRESENT	
I should love	I should be loving	
thou wouldst love	thou wouldst be loving	
he would love	he would be loving	
we should love	we should be loving	
you would love	you would be loving	
they would love	they would be loving	
	PAST OR PERFECT	
I should have loved	I should have been loving	
thou wouldst have loved	thou wouldst have been loving	
he would have loved	he would have been loving	
we should have loved	we should have been loving	
you would have loved	you would have been loving	
they would have loved	they would have been loving	

SIMPLE FORM	PROGRESSIVE	EMPHATIC

Potential

PRESENT

I may love	I may be loving
thou mayest love	thou mayest be loving
he may love	he may be loving
we may love	we may be loving
you may love	you may be loving
they may love	they may be loving

PAST

I might love	I might be loving
thou mightst love	thou mightst be loving
he might love	he might be loving
we might love	we might be loving
you might love	you might be loving
they might love	they might be loving

PRESENT PERFECT

I may have loved	I may have been loving
thou mayest have loved	thou mayest have been loving
he may have loved	he may have been loving
we may have loved	we may have been loving
you may have loved	you may have been loving
they may have loved	they may have been loving

PAST PERFECT

I might have loved	I might have been loving
thou mightst have loved	thou mightst have been loving
he might have loved	he might have been loving
we might have loved	we might have been loving
you might have loved	you might have been loving
they might have loved	they might have been loving

SIMPLE FORM	PROGRESSIVE	EMPHATIC
	Obligative	
	PRESENT	
I must love	I must be loving	
thou must love	thou must be loving	
he must love	he must be loving	
we must love	we must be loving	
you must love	you must be loving	
they must love	they must be loving	
	PAST OR PERFECT	
I must have loved	I must have been loving	
thou must have loved	thou must have been loving	
he must have loved	he must have been loving	
we must have loved	we must have been loving	
you must have loved	you must have been loving	
they must have loved	they must have been loving	
	Imperative	
	PRESENT	
love (thou)	be (thou) loving	do (thou) love
love (you)	be (you) loving	do (you) love
	Infinitives	
	PRESENT	
(to) love	(to) be loving	
loving	(being loving)	
	PERFECT	
(to) have loved	(to) have been loving	
having loved	having been loving	

SIMPLE FORM	PROGRESSIVE	EMPHATIC
	Participles	
	PRESENT	
loving	(being loving)	
	PAST	
loved		
	PERFECT	
having loved	having been loving	

Passive Voice

Love passive

Indicative

	PRESENT
I am loved	I am being loved
thou art loved	thou art being loved
he is loved	he is being loved
we are loved	we are being loved
you are loved	you are being loved
they are loved	they are being loved
	PAST
I was loved	I was being loved
thou wast loved	thou wast being loved
he was loved	he was being loved
we were loved	we were being loved
you were loved	you were being loved
they were loved	they were being loved
	FUTURE
I shall be loved	
thou wilt be loved	
he will be loved	
we shall be loved	
you will be loved	
they will be loved	

SIMPLE FORM	PROGRESSIVE	EMPHATIC
PRESENT PERFECT		
I have been loved		
thou hast been loved		
he has been loved		
we have been loved		
you have been loved		
they have been loved		
PAST PERFECT		
I had been loved		
thou hadst been loved		
he had been loved		
we had been loved		
you had been loved		
they had been loved		
FUTURE PERFECT		
I shall have been loved		
thou wilt have been loved		
he will have been loved		
we shall have been loved		
you will have been loved		
they will have been loved		

Subjunctive

PRESENT		
I be loved		
thou be (est) loved		
he be loved		
we be loved		
you be loved		
they be loved		
PAST		
I were loved	I were being loved	
thou were (t) loved	thou were (t) being loved	
he were loved	he were being loved	
we were loved	we were being loved	
you were loved	you were being loved	
they were loved	they were being loved	

SIMPLE FORM	PROGRESSIVE	EMPHATIC

PRESENT PERFECT

I have been loved
thou have been loved
he have been loved
we have been loved
you have been loved
they have been loved

PAST PERFECT

I had been loved
thou had been loved
he had been loved
we had been loved
you had been loved
they had been loved

Conditional

PRESENT

I should be loved
thou wouldst be loved
he would be loved
we should be loved
you would be loved
they would be loved

PAST OR PERFECT

I should have been loved
thou wouldst have been loved
he would have been loved
we should have been loved
you would have been loved
they would have been loved

SIMPLE FORM	PROGRESSIVE	EMPHATIC

Potential

PRESENT

I may be loved
thou mayest be loved
he may be loved
we may be loved
you may be loved
they may be loved

PAST

I might be loved
thou mightst be loved
he might be loved
we might be loved
you might be loved
they might be loved

PRESENT PERFECT

I may have been loved
thou mayest have been loved
he may have been loved
we may have been loved
you may have been loved
they may have been loved

PAST PERFECT

I might have been loved
thou mightst have been loved
he might have been loved
we might have been loved
you might have been loved
they might have been loved

Obligative

PRESENT

I must be loved
thou must be loved
he must be loved

SIMPLE FORM	PROGRESSIVE	EMPHATIC
	PRESENT — *Continued*	
we must be loved		
you must be loved		
they must be loved		
	PAST OR PERFECT	
I must have been loved		
thou must have been loved		
he must have been loved		
we must have been loved		
you must have been loved		
they must have been loved		
	Imperative	
	PRESENT	
be (thou) loved		do (thou) be loved
be (you) loved		do (you) be loved
	Infinitives	
	PRESENT	
(to) be loved	being loved	
	PERFECT	
(to) have been loved		
having been loved		
	Participles	
	PRESENT	
	being loved	
	PAST	
loved		
	PERFECT	
having been loved		

A SYNOPSIS OF *GIVE*

(A regular verb of the old conjugation)

Give synopsis active

A synopsis includes all the forms for a single person of the verb through all the moods and tenses, together with the infinitives and participles.

Active Voice

PRINCIPAL PARTS

give gave giving given

Indicative

	SIMPLE	PROGRESSIVE	EMPHATIC
Present	I give	I am giving	I do give
Past	I gave	I was giving	I did give
Future	I shall give	I shall be giving	
Pres. Perf.	I have given	I have been giving	
Past Perf.	I had given	I had been giving	
Fut. Perf.	I shall have given	I shall have been giving	

Subjunctive

Present	I give	I be giving	I do give
Past	I gave	I were giving	I did give
Pres. Perf.	I have given	I have been giving	
Past Perf.	I had given	I had been giving	

Conditional

Present	I should give	I should be giving
Past or Perf.	I should have given	I should have been giving

Potential

Present	I may give	I may be giving
Past	I might give	I might be giving
Pres. Perf.	I may have given	I may have been giving
Past Perf.	I might have given	I might have been giving

Obligative

	SIMPLE	PROGRESSIVE	EMPHATIC
Present	I must give	I must be giving	
Past or Perf.	I must have given	I must have been giving	

Imperative

Present	give (thou)	be (thou) giving	do (thou) give

Infinitives

Present	(to) give giving	(to) be giving
Perf.	(to) have given having given	(to) have been giving

Participles

Present	giving	(been giving)
Past	given	
Perf.	having given	having been giving

Passive Voice

Give synopsis passive

Indicative

Present	I am given	I am being given
Past	I was given	I was being given
Future	I shall be given	
Pres. Perf.	I have been given	
Past Perf.	I had been given	
Fut. Perf.	I shall have been given	

Subjunctive

Present	I be given	
Past	I were given	I were being given
Pres. Perf.	I have been given	
Past Perf.	I had been given	

Conditional

	SIMPLE	PROGRESSIVE	EMPHATIC
Present	I should be given		
Past or Perf.	I should have been given		

Potential

Present	I may be given
Past	I might be given
Pres. Perf.	I may have been given
Past Perf.	I might have been given

Obligative

Present	I must be given
Past or Perf.	I must have been given

Imperative

Present	be (thou) given	do (thou) be given

Infinitives

Present	(to) be given	being given
Perfect	(to) have been given having been given	

Participles

Present		being given
Past	given	
Perfect	having been given	

Interrogative conjugation

Verbs are conjugated interrogatively by placing the subject after the verb in simple tenses, and after the first auxiliary verb in compound tenses and the emphatic and progressive forms of conjugation. Usually, however, only the progressive and the emphatic forms are used interrogatively in the present and past.

SUBJUNCTIVE			CONDITIONAL	
SIMPLE	PROGRESSIVE	EMPHATIC	SIMPLE	PROGRESSIV
love *give*	be + *pr. p.*	do + *inf.*	should / would + *inf.*	should / would + be + *p*
loved *gave*	were + *pr. p.*	did + *inf.*		
have + *p. p.*	have been + *pr. p.*		should / would + have + *p. p.*	should / would + have + *pr.*
had + *p. p.*	had been + *pr. p.*			

terro
njug

e. *pr. p.* = present participle.

SYNOPSIS OF *LOVE*

Indicative Interrogative

SIMPLE	PROGRESSIVE	PASSIVE
do I love	am I loving	am I loved
did I love	was I loving	was I loved
have I loved	have I been loving	shall I be loved
had I loved	had I been loving	have I been loved
shall I love	shall I be loving	had I been loved
shall I have loved	shall I have been loving	shall I have been loved

Love interrogative

Verbs are conjugated negatively by adding *not* to the simple tenses or to the first auxiliary in compound forms. Here, however, as in the interrogative conjugation, either the emphatic or the progressive form is substituted for the simple form, present or past. *Never* may precede the simple form, or follow an auxiliary: —

Negative conjugation

I do *not* love I could *not* have loved I *never* loved
I have *not* loved I may *not* be loved

Verbs are conjugated reflexively by adding as direct object a compound personal pronoun agreeing in gender, person, and number with the subject: —

Reflexive

I hurt *myself* they have hurt *themselves*
why should we worry *ourselves*

Impersonal verbs are found only in the third singular; they have for subject the neuter pronoun *it*, or no subject is expressed: —

Impersonal

It *rains* me*thinks*

The accompanying chart shows the composition of verb forms and groups throughout the entire conjugation of the active voice.

LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

Principal parts

No hard and fast line can now be drawn between verbs of the old conjugation and verbs of the new. Many verbs of the old have fully gone over to the new, and many are now in transition. Nor is it easy to distinguish irregular from regular verbs of the old conjugation. Of the following lists, the first contains most of the verbs of the old conjugation; the second, verbs forming principal parts according to both conjugations; the third, irregular verbs entirely of the new conjugation: —

Regular and irregular, old

INFINITIVE	PRESENT	PAST	PARTICIPLE
abide		abode	abode
arise		arose	arisen
be	am	was	been
bear		bore bare	borne born
beat		beat	beat beaten
begin		began	begun
behold		beheld	beheld beholden
bid		bade bad	bidden bid
bind		bound	bound bounden
bite		bit	bitten
blow		blew	blown
break		broke	broken
chide		chid	chidden
choose		chose	chosen
cling		clung	clung
come		came	come
do		did	done
draw		drew	drawn
drink		drank	drunk drunken
drive		drove	driven
eat		ate	eaten

INFINITIVE PRESENT	PAST	PARTICIPLE
fall	fell	fallen
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fling	flung	flung
fly	flew	flown
forbear	forbore	forborne
forget	forgot	forgotten
forsake	forsook	forsaken
freeze	froze	frozen
get	got	got gotten
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grow	grew	grown
hide	hid	hidden
hold	held	held holden
know	knew	known
lie	lay	lain
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
see	saw	seen
shake	shook	shaken
shine	shone	shone
shoot	shot	shot
shrink	shrank	shrunk shrunken
sing	sang	sung
sink	sank	sunk sunken
sit	sat	sat
slay	slew	slain
slide	slid	slidden slid
sling	slung	slung
slink	slunk slank	slunk
smite	smote	smitten
speak	spoke spake	spoken
spin	spun	spun
spring	sprang	sprung

INFINITIVE PRESENT	PAST	PARTICIPLE
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
stick	stuck	stuck
sting	stung	stung
stink	stunk	stunk
stride	strode	stridden
strike	struck	struck stricken
string	strung	strung
strive	strove	striven
swear	swore sware	sworn
swim	swam swum	swum
swing	swung	swung
take	took	taken
tear	tore tare	torn
throw	threw	thrown
tread	trod	trodden
wear	wore	worn
weave	wove	woven
win	won	won
wind	wound	wound
wit wot	wist	
wring	wrung	wrung
write	wrote	written

Mixed The following verbs have parts of both the old and the new conjugation:—

INFINITIVE	PAST TENSE	PARTICIPLE
awake	awaked awoke	awaked awoke
cleave	cleaved cleft	cleaved cleft
	clove	cloven
crow	crowed crew	crowed
dig	digged dug	digged dug
freight	freighted fraught	freighted fraught
grave	graved	graved graven
hang	hanged hung	hanged hung

INFINITIVE	PAST TENSE	PARTICIPLE
heave	heaved hove	heaved hove
hew	hewed	hewed hewn
lade	laded	laded laden
light	lighted lit	lighted lit
mow	mowed	mowed mown
rive	rived	rived riven
rot	rotted	rotted rotten
saw	sawed	sawed sawn
seethe	seethed	seethed sodden
shape	shaped	shaped shapen
shave	shaved	shaved shaven
shear	sheared shore	sheared shorn
show	showed	shown
sow	sowed	sowed sown
spit	spit spat	spit
stave	staved stove	staved stove
strew	strewed	strewed strewn
strow	strowed	strowed strown
swell	swelled	swelled swollen
thrive	thrived throve	thrived thriven
wake	waked woke	waked woke
wax	waxed	waxed waxen

Irregular new

The following are irregular verbs of the new conjugation. Most of the defective verbs start from a past tense of the old conjugation used as present: —

INFINITIVE PRESENT	PAST	PARTICIPLE
bend	bent	bended bent
bereave	bereaved bereft	bereaved bereft
beseech	besought	besought
beset	beset	beset
bestead	bestead	bestead
beware		
bleed	bled	bled

INFINITIVE	PRESENT	PAST	PARTICIPLE
breed		bred	bred
build		builded built	builded built
burn		burned burnt	burned burnt
burst		burst	burst
buy		bought	bought
	can	could	
cast		cast	cast
catch		caught	caught
clothe		clothed clad	clothed clad
creep		crept	crept
cut		cut	cut
dare	dare (3d sing.)	dared durst dare	dared
deal		dealed dealt	dealed dealt
dream		dreamed dreamt	dreamed dreamt
dwell		dwelt	dwelt
feed		fed	fed
feel		felt	felt
flee		fled	fled
gild		gilded gilt	gilded gilt
gird		girded girt	girded girt
have		had	had
hear		heard	heard
hit		hit	hit
hurt		hurt	hurt
keep		kept	kept
kneel		kneeled knelt	kneeled knelt
knit		knitted knit	knitted knit
lay		laid	laid
lead		led	led
lean		leaned leant	leaned leant
leave		left	left
leap		leaped leapt	leaped leapt
lend		lent	lent
lose		lost	lost
make		made	made
	may	might	

INFINITIVE	PRESENT	PAST	PARTICIPLE
mean		meant	meant
meet		met	met
	methinks	methought	
(mote)	must	(must)	
need	need (3d sing.)	needed need	needed
	ought	(ought)	
pay		paid	paid
pen		penned pent	penned pent
put		put	put
quit		quitted quit	quitted quit
		quoth	
read		read	read
reave		reft	reft
rend		rent	rent
rid		ridded rid	ridded rid
say		said	said
seek		sought	sought
sell		sold	sold
send		sent	sent
set		set	set
	shall	should	
shed		shed	shed
shoe		shod	shod
shred		shredded shred	shredded shred
shut		shut	shut
sleep		slept	slept
slit		slitted slit	slitted slit
smell		smelled smelt	smelled smelt
speed		speeded sped	speeded sped
spell		spelled spelt	spelled spelt
spend		spent	spent
spill		spilled spilt	spilled spilt
split		split	split
spoil		spoiled spoilt	spoiled spoilt
spread		spread	spread
sweat		sweated sweat	sweated sweat

INFINITIVE PRESENT	PAST	PARTICIPLE
sweep	swept	swept
teach	taught	taught
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
thrust	thrust	thrust
wed	wedded wed	wedded wed
weep	wept	wept
wend	wended went	wended
wet	wetted wet	wetted wet
whet	whetted whet	whetted wet
will	would	
work	worked wrought	worked wrought

There is at present a tendency to change the ending *ed* to *t*, in verbs ending with a sibilant or with *k* or *p*, to make spelling correspond to sound, *e.g. drest*, *trickt*, *dropt*, *fixt*.

Parsing The description or parsing of a verb involves giving the kind on various bases, derivation or composition, principal parts if irregular or of the old conjugation, properties, agreement, synopsis of mood, conjugation of tense, and grouping if a compound form.

EXERCISES

Parse the verbs.

Model. — I *tell* you that which you yourselves *do know*.
No man *can do* these miracles except God *be* with him.

tell is a verb
simple
transitive
irregular old conj.
tell told told
active
indicative
present
first
singular
subject *I*
(synopsis and conjugation)

do know is a verb
simple
transitive
regular old conj.
know knew known
active
indicative
present
emphatic
second
plural
subject *you*
made by adding root inf. to pres. ind. of *do*

can do is a verb
simple
transitive
irregular old conj.
do did done
active
potential
present
third
singular
subject *man*
made by adding root inf. to pres. of *can*

be is a verb
simple
intransitive
irregular old conj.
be was been
subjunctive
present
third
singular
subject *God*

1. He hedges and becomes silent when he should speak out plainly.

2. Dost thou love life, then do not squander time.

3. O that this too solid flesh would melt.

4. They were all armed by this time, I thought.

5. Some had come too late and were shut out.

6. I could eat no dinner and felt constrained to watch the red coals in the grate.

7. It was high time to make the wassail.

8. I must decline to impart the only secret I was ever known to have kept.

9. I would trust the waiter with untold gold.

10. Her beauty has been wrecked in some great misfortune.

11. The supper was done, and my brown beauty had been elevated on the table.

12. We ought to take hands as we sit here, in deference to the toast.

13. My story being finished, we broke up as the clock struck twelve.

14. I should like to see one of the canons.

15. We tumbled into all the cold water that could be accumulated.

16. He could not have been gone more than an hour when I fell asleep.

17. Sir, if thou hast borne him hence, tell me where thou hast laid him.

18. Did they not lay the sick where his shadow might fall on them?

19. The letter might have been written, but it could never have been sent.

20. I was being rapidly whirled toward London, though I did not know it.

21. We are not what we might have been, yet we must be content.

22. Push forward till thou stand once more upon thy native soil.

23. They fear lest the blood of the royal martyr be visited on them and their children.

24. We cannot censure Milton for not wishing to change his opinion.

25. If anything more were wanted, the book of Salmasius would furnish it.

26. He never seems to have coveted despotic power.

27. He that runs may read; but he that walks may misinterpret.

28. Having been duly elected, he quietly assumed the duties of his office.

29. Ye should have snatched his rod and bound him fast.

30. We can fancy that we are visiting him in his small lodgings.

31. When we shall have completed our work, a suitable recompense will be made.

32. One of the seven was accustomed to say: "Laws are like cobwebs; the small flies are caught, and the great ones break through.

33. If you would learn to write, you must learn it in the street.

34. How goes it now, sir? If it be summer news, smile to it before; if winterly, thou needst keep thy countenance still.

35. Be aye sticking in a tree, Jack; it will be growing while you are sleeping.

36. The orator persuades and carries all with him, he knows not how; the rhetorician can prove that he ought to have carried all with him, when he has persuaded nobody.

37. Take heed lest passion sway thy judgment to do aught which else free will would not permit.

38. May I govern my passions with absolute sway,
And grow wiser and better as my strength wears away.

(Further material may be found in the exercises after the sections on nouns, pronouns, and adjectives.)

- ADVERB
  - 1 Definition. Uses
  - 2 Kinds
    - (1) Basis of form
      - *a* Simple
      - *b* Derivative
      - *c* Compound
    - (2) Basis of meaning
      - *a* Place and motion
      - *b* Time and succession
      - *c* Manner and quality
      - *d* Measure and degree
      - *e* Number
      - *f* Comparison
      - *g* Modality
        - (*a*) Affirmative
        - (*b*) Negative
        - (*c*) Potential
        - (*d*) Causal
    - (3) Basis of use
      - *a* Pure, simply modifying
      - *b* Conjunctive
      - *c* Demonstrative
      - *d* Interrogative
      - *e* Correlative
      - *f* Responsive
  - 3 Properties
    - *a* Degree
  - 4 Inflection (Comparison)
    - *a* Changed form
      - (*a*) Regular
      - (*b*) Irregular
    - *b* Grouping
  - 5 Substitutes
    - *a* Nouns
    - *b* Adjectives
    - *c* Prepositions

V. ADVERBS

Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. They may also modify a preposition introducing a phrase, the whole phrase, or an entire clause or sentence: — **Adverbs**

He *sings well.*
His voice is *very fine.*
He speaks *quite distinctly.*
This is *far beyond* my hope.
Just for a handful of silver he left us.
Certainly the debt will be paid.

According to their form, adverbs are simple, derivative, compound; simple, when traceable to no other word in the language; derivative, when made from other words by prefixes, suffixes, or internal change; compound, when formed by the union of two or more independent words: — **Simple, etc.**

often *frequently* *somewhat*

On the basis of their meaning, adverbs are of several classes. **Classes**

Adverbs of place and motion: — **Place and motion**

here	*below*	*near*	*hence*
there	*before*	*hither*	*thence*
where	*behind*	*thither*	*whence*
above	*far*	*whither*	*homeward*

Adverbs of time and succession: — **Time and succession**

now	*yesterday*	*to-day*	*before*	*henceforth*
then	*to-morrow*	*often*	*after*	*afterward*
when	*presently*	*heretofore*	*since*	*soon*

Manner and quality Adverbs of manner and quality: —

thus so quickly well ill softly bravely seriously

Measure and degree Adverbs of measure and degree: —

so	*very*	*too*
little	*exceedingly*	*hardly*
far	*enough*	*partly*

Number Adverbs of number: —

first once twice sixthly

Comparison Adverbs of comparison: —

so as too the only sufficiently enough

Modality Adverbs of modality: —

Affirmative, —	*indeed*	*certainly*	*truly*	*surely*
Negative, —	*not*	*never*	*nay*	*nowise*
Potential, —	*perhaps*	*possibly*	*probably*	
Causal, —	*hence*	*therefore*	*accordingly*	

Uses Adverbs may be again classified according to their use. **Pure** Pure adverbs are used only as modifiers: —

now soon thus really surely twice fast

Conjunctive Conjunctive or relative adverbs connect a modifying clause with the modified word, and modify a word, usually the verb, in this clause: —

when	*whence*	*how*
while	*whither*	*as*
where	*why*	*the*

Interrogative Interrogative adverbs ask a question, direct or indirect, and modify some word in the question: —

when where whence whither why how

Demonstrative adverbs point out definite time, place, manner: — **Demonstrative**

here *there* *then* *thus*

Responsive adverbs answer a question: —

aye *yes* *nay* *no*

Correlative adverbs relate to a preceding adverb, and introduce a clause modifying it; at the same time they modify a word in the dependent clause: — **Correlative**

so as *as as* *the the* *then when* *there where* *then while*

The adverbs *here*, *there*, and *where* are used with the force of the demonstratives *this* and *that* and the relative *which*, in certain compound expressions: — **In compounds**

*here*in = in *this* *there*in = in *that* *where*in = in *which*

The adverb *there* is often used as a provisional subject of a verb, the real or logical subject coming after the verb except in relative or interrogative clauses: — **Use of *there***

There were *giants* in the land.
There came three wise *men* from the East.
Who is *there* that he does not know?
What there is must be accepted.

Many adverbs of quality or manner and a few of degree are compared to express degree. A few short adverbs are inflected, like adjectives, adding (*e*)*r* to the positive to form a comparative, and adding (*e*)*st* to form a superlative. Adverbs corresponding to irregular adjectives in the positive, take the other irregular forms to express different degrees. Most adverbs, however, are **Comparison** **Regular**

compared by prefixing to the positive degree the words *more* and *most*: —

Irregular

well	better	best
ill badly	worse	worst
fast	faster	fastest
much	more	most
soon	sooner	soonest
often	oftener	oftenest
little	less	least
far	farther	farthest
ably	more ably	most ably
sincerely	more sincerely	most sincerely
suddenly	more suddenly	most suddenly

Substitutes Adverbs, as has been shown, are sometimes substituted for adjectives, for nouns, especially after a preposition, for pronouns in the compound expressions *herein*, *therein*, *wherewith*, etc.; and *there* is used as provisional subject of a verb. Adjectives, both in poetry and in prose, some nouns of time and place, and some pronouns are substituted for adverbs: —

The bell rings *clear*.
Loud rang his voice upon the blast.
Come *home* three *times*, and then go *back!*
The trees are not *half* so tall.
He is *none* the worse for it.
What is all this worth?

Prepositions are often used as adverbs: —

We will remain *within*. Come *on*, Lightfoot.
They will run *off* when an officer turns *up*.

Parsing The parsing of an adverb involves giving the kind on different bases, formation, forms, and the word modified or clause introduced, or both.

EXERCISES

Parse the adverbs.

Model. — He *then* ran *rapidly homeward.*

then is an adverb	*rapidly* is an adverb	*homeward* is an adverb
simple	derivative, adjective *rapid* + suffix *ly*	derivative, noun *home* + suffix *ward*
demonstrative		
of time	of manner	of direction or place
modifies verb *ran*	modifies verb *ran*	modifies verb *ran*

1. He was seldom heard to speak loud.
2. Drink your coffee slowly and tranquilly.
3. The climate is perfectly delightful.
4. Meanwhile the clouds were gathering fast.
5. They sat together and read far into the night.
6. Why do you box my ears so soundly?
7. Not once nor twice has he gleefully told the story.
8. Up comes one bucket and down goes the other.
9. Perhaps it may turn out a song, perhaps turn out a sermon.
10. I am somewhat at a loss to know exactly what he means.
11. Whence come wars? Wherefore must men fight?
12. Where thou goest thither will I go, and there shall my grave be made.
13. I cannot tell why he comes, nor how he spends his days.
14. Undoubtedly, she loved her husband best; but she loved him only for his money.
15. He learns his lessons right well, and kicks a ball right masterly.
16. I will work for you first, last, and always.
17. While this is theoretically right, it is practically inexpedient.
18. Fools and dead men never change their opinion.
19. I send you herewith a carefully prepared statement.

- CONJUNCTION
  - 1 Definition. Uses
  - 2 Kinds
    - (1) Basis of form
      - *a* Simple
      - *b* Derivative
      - *c* Compound
    - (2) Basis of meaning
      - *a* Coördinating
        - (*a*) Copulative
        - (*b*) Alternative
        - (*c*) Adversative
        - (*d*) Illative
      - *b* Subordinating
        - (*a*) Of time
        - (*b*) Of place
        - (*c*) Of cause
        - (*d*) Of condition
        - (*e*) Of concession
        - (*f*) Of purpose
        - (*g*) Of result
        - (*h*) Of comparison
    - (3) Basis of use
      - *a* Pure
      - *b* Adverbial
      - *c* Introductory
      - *d* Correlative
  - 3 Substitutes
    - *a* Relative words
    - *b* Interrogative words
    - *c* Adverbs
    - *d* Participles

VI. CONJUNCTIONS

Conjunctions connect expressions — words, phrases, clauses — of like rank; or they connect modifying clauses with the modified word; or they introduce clauses used as nouns. **Conjunctions**

According to their form, conjunctions are simple, derivative, or compound. Groups of words are sometimes used as conjunctions: — **Simple, etc.**

but *before* *however* *as well as*

According to their meaning, conjunctions are coördinating or subordinating. **Classes**

Coördinating conjunctions connect like or equivalent words, phrases, and clauses, in a like construction. They are sometimes classified into copulative, alternative, adversative, and illative. **Coördinating**

The copulative conjunctions imply addition: —

and also likewise too eke moreover besides as well as

Liberty *and* union, now *and* forever, one *and* inseparable.

The alternative conjunctions imply choice: — **Alternative**

or *nor* *else* *either* *neither* *otherwise*

The criminal must be hanged *or* shot.
He will *neither* buy *nor* sell.

Both copulatives and alternatives are used correlatively: — **Correlative**

both and *alike and* *at once and*
not only but also *either or* *neither nor*

Such expressions are capable, however, of further analysis. In the expression, —

Both my father and myself were present,

both is a numeral adjective used as a dual pronoun subject of the verb, and *father* and *myself* are its appositives.

So in, —

He is *either* a blacksmith or a carpenter,

either is a pronoun, predicate nominative, and *blacksmith* and *carpenter* are in apposition with it.

Whatever such correlatives connect, some such analysis is generally possible.

Adversative The adversative conjunctions imply something in opposition to what has been expressed or implied: —

but yet however still only nevertheless notwithstanding

He is good *but* not great.
He has promised, *nevertheless* he may break his promise.
It is sweet, *still* it may turn sour.

Illative The illative conjunctions imply a reason or inference; some of these are also adverbs: —

for hence then thence therefore accordingly consequently

I believe him, *for* I have not known him to lie.
They are interested; *therefore* they will exert themselves.

Subordinating Subordinating conjunctions either connect a dependent clause with the modified word or introduce a

substantive clause, *i.e.* a clause used as a noun. A dependent clause enters into a sentence with the value of an adjective, an adverb, or a noun:—

I shall not see a happy day *until* my debts are paid.
You are happy *because* you are good.
I do not know *that* I can help you.

Subordinating conjunctions are of several classes.

Conjunctions of time and place, — partly relative or interrogative adverbs, and partly prepositions before clauses:— **Time place**

when	*whence*	*before*	*until*
while	*whither*	*after*	*till*
where	*as*	*since*	*ere*

Conjunctions of cause or reason:— **Cause reason**

because	*since*	*whereas*	*that*
for	*as*	*seeing*	*considering*

Conjunctions of condition:— **Condition**

if *unless* *until* *provided* *except* *supposing*

Conjunctions of concession:— **Concession**

though *although* *albeit* *notwithstanding* *granted*

Conjunctions of end or purpose:— **Purpose**

that *in order that* *lest*

Conjunctions of comparison:— **Comparison**

as *than*

As is correlative with a preceding word of character or kind, quantity, degree, or manner. *Than* is correlative with a preceding comparative adjective or adverb: —

He is not *so tall as* I am (tall).
He is *shorter than* I am (short).

Introductory words

That and *whether*, as well as the interrogative adverbs *when*, *where*, *whence*, *whither*, *why*, and *how*, are much used to introduce substantive clauses; the first two are then introductory words only, the others are also adverbs: —

I know *that my Redeemer liveth.*
We heard *why you came.*

Summary

It is thus seen that subordinating conjunctions are pure, *i.e.* they are connectives and nothing else, or they are adverbial, serving as connectives, and at the same time modifying a verb in the dependent clause; or they are merely introductory to a clause used as a substantive, — subject, predicate, object, object of a preposition, and the like; or they are correlative, accompanying and relating to a preceding or succeeding adjective, adverb, or conjunction.

Substitutes

Many words are used as adverbs, conjunctions, and prepositions; adverbs when they simply accompany a verb, adverb, or adjective; conjunctions when they introduce a modifying clause; prepositions when they introduce a modifying noun, pronoun, or equivalent: —

He went long *before.*
He stands *before* the glass.

He would die *before* he would steal.
Jack came tumbling *after*.
Jack went *after* his father.
Jack went away *after* he had eaten dinner.

Any relative word, substantive, adjective, or adverbial, performs the office of a conjunction in addition to its office as a noun, an adjective, or an adverb.

A few participles have come to be used as subordinating conjunctions: —

We shall go *provided* you are willing.
Ye have sympathy *seeing* ye have been in misfortune.

Parsing

The parsing of a conjunction consists in giving its classification on different bases, and its use in the sentence. This, however, can be only imperfectly done until after the compound and the complex sentences have been discussed.

PREPOSITION
- 1 Definition. Uses
- 2 Kinds
  - (1) Basis of form
    - *a* Simple
    - *b* Derivative
    - *c* Compound
    - *d* Groups of words
- 3 Substitutes

VII. PREPOSITIONS

Prepositions

A preposition connects a noun or its equivalent with the word which the noun modifies, and shows various relations,—time, place, agency, purpose, reference, separation, opposition, possession, instrument, and the like. The modified word may be a noun, a pronoun, an adjective, a verb, an adverb. The modifying noun or pronoun is called the object of the preposition and is in the objective case:—

Object

Modified word

a *box* of *wood*	*come* to *me*
they of your *party*	*sufficiently* for my *purpose*
good for *food*	

Object pronoun, etc.

The equivalent of a noun after a preposition may be a pronoun, an adjective in certain idioms, an adverb of time or place, a phrase, an infinitive, a clause:—

from *them*	since *then*
on *high*	from *beyond the river*
in *vain*	except *that he is dead*
to *there*	

Place of preposition

The natural place of a preposition is before its object or the expression which it governs; but in poetry the object sometimes precedes; and in familiar prose the object is often placed before the verb, the preposition following the verb:—

I've travelled much this weary world *around.*
What do you come *for?*

Simple, etc. Prepositions are, like other parts of speech, simple, derivative, and compound; some groups of words are used as prepositions: —

at *toward* *without* *in front of*

Converted prepositions Prepositions, the object not being expressed, are often used with the force of adverbs. A few participles are substituted for prepositions. Many words are either prepositions or conjunctions, being used to introduce either a word modifier or a clause.

Simple The commonest simple propositions are: —

at	*but*	*ere*	*in*	*off*	*through*	*under*
after	*by*	*for*	*on*	*over*	*till*	*up*
against	*down*	*from*	*of*	*since*	*to*	*with*

Derivative and compound Some prepositions made of prepositional or adverbial elements are: —

about	*behind*	*toward*	*until*	*within*
above	*beyond*	*throughout*	*unto*	*without*
before	*into*	*underneath*	*upon*	

Some prepositions made from noun and adjective elements are: —

across	*amidst*	*around*	*below*	*between*
along	*among*	*aslant*	*beside*	*betwixt*
amid	*amongst*	*athwart*	*besides*	*despite*

Some prepositions made of verbal forms are: —

concerning	*excepting*	*pending*	*saving*
during	*notwithstanding*	*respecting*	*touching*
except	*past*	*save*	

Some groups of words equivalent to prepositions are: — Groups of words

according to	*by means of*	*instead of*
along side	*from out*	*in respect to*
as for	*for the sake of*	*in regard to*
as to	*in front of*	*on this side of*
because of	*in lieu of*	*out of*
by way of	*in spite of*	

and there are many others.

The parsing of a preposition involves only giving its form — simple, derivative, compound, or word group — and pointing out the object and the word modified. After a study of syntax, the construction of the prepositional phrase and the relation expressed by the preposition should be included in parsing. Parsing

EXERCISES

Select the adverbs, conjunctions, and prepositions, give the class on various bases, and tell their use in the sentence.

1. You and I are to go in the same boat.

2. They were on the roof; but they quickly came down at sight of us.

3. Neither the girl nor the mother knew about the fire.

4. He laughed as he dipped his pen into the inkstand.

5. Though they differ from us in some way, they resemble us in this, that they go to church regularly.

6. We shall take the bull by the horns, if we cannot throw him over the fence.

7. Look out for yourself; for this is the madman that I spoke to you about.

8. I will ask whether she has anything to reproach me with.

9. He is not only frivolous, but also drunken; nor can he be reformed by mild persuasion.

10. Who knows save heaven how his audit stands?

11. Live well that men may think you know how to live.

12. Words without thoughts never to heaven go.

13. Love not slumber lest ye come to want.

14. Seeing you have been through the war, you deserve rest as well as recompense.

15. The more one knows, the more one suspects one's ignorance.

16. He was seen both before and after the battle.

17. Unless reason preside over inclination and passion, we shall pick up chaff instead of grain.

18. Love of learning and of truth should stimulate study.

19. From peak to peak the rattling crags among
Leaps the live thunder.

20. Wherefore watch and pray lest ye enter into temptation.

21. Now you are here my fears subside.

22. I will look unto the hills whence cometh my help.

23. Wherewithal shall a young man cleanse his way? By taking heed thereto according to thy word.

24. I will wait until midnight; I will wait until you return.

25. They have been here before. They left before nightfall. They will return here before they go abroad.

26. Jack came tumbling after. He came after his brother. He will go after his work is done.

27. I know a bank whereon the wild thyme blows.

28. The more he tried to please her, the worse she treated him.

29. Jones worked hard enough, but hardly with success.

30. They folded their tents like the Arab,
And as silently stole away.

31. Love me little, love me long.

32. Thus when the lamp that lighted
The traveller first goes out,
He feels awhile benighted
And looks round in fear and doubt.

VIII. INTERJECTIONS

Interjections Interjections are not, in the stricter sense, parts of speech. They do not enter into the structure of the sentence. They accompany the expression of thought, and express emotion or will. Tone, stress, inflection, have quite as much to do with the meaning as do the sounds or words uttered. A single sound, like *ah!* may be made to express various emotions.

Classes Some of the expressions used as interjections are:—

Joy, gladness, pleasant surprise, — *Oh! hurrah! huzza!*
Grief, suffering, painful surprise, — *Oh! alas! oh dear! O horror!*
Contempt, dislike, — *Fie! pshaw! fudge!*
Calling attention, — *Halloo! ho there!*
Desiring silence, — *Hush! hist! st!*

Converted words While almost all the parts of speech are occasionally used as interjections, there are, in addition to words like those already given, others more frequently used:—

Imitative words, — *Bang! whiz! pop! bow-wow! rub-a-dub-dub!*
Relics of oaths, — *Heavens! Hell! Zounds! Egad!*
Interrogatives and emphatic adverbs, — *How! why! what! indeed! well!*

Wishes, etc. Expressions shading off into wishes, commands, and expressions of address:—

O for a friend! *Would it were so!*
Justice, O royal duke!
Hence! Home! you idle creatures!

IX. WORDS USED AS SEVERAL PARTS OF SPEECH

As: Subordinating conjunction — single, — As

Hell trembled *as* (= when) he strode.
You will go *as* (= since) I cannot.

Adverb and correlative conjunction, —

Go *as* fast *as* you can.
Do (so) *as* I do.
He is not so spry *as* he used to be.

Relative pronoun — definite, —

Such tears *as* angels weep burst forth.

Relative adjective — indefinite, —

As is the mother so is the daughter.

Introductory word — with appositive noun, —

He gained fame *as* an orator.

with appositive adjective, —

He was received *as* acceptable.

with predicate noun, —

He came back *as* leader.

with adverb, —

I have not decided *aś* yet.

with preposition, —

As for me, I will serve the Lord.

But: Coördinating conjunction, — But

He studies hard *but* does not advance.

Subordinating conjunction, —

It is not so cold *but* we dare go.
Who knows *but* he may come?

Preposition, —

None knew her *but* myself.
None knew her *but* to love her.

Adverb, —

She was *but* indifferent.

Relative pronoun, —

There is not a child *but* (= who not) knows it.

Like *Like:* Noun, —

Did you ever see the *like?*
Like produces *like.*

Adjective, —

The son is *like* the father.

Adverb, —

He runs *like* a deer.

Verb, —

We all *like* order.

That *That:* Adjective, demonstrative, —

That man is my father.

Pronoun, demonstrative, —

That is my father.

Pronoun, relative, —

He *that* believeth shall be saved.

Subordinating conjunction, —

He is so ill *that* he will not recover.
He died *that* we might live.
I grieve *that* I offended you.
I am sorry *that* you cannot go.

Substantive conjunction, —

I know *that* my Redeemer liveth.

Adverb of degree, —

My means will not reach *that* far.

What: Interrogative pronoun — proper, —

What came ye out to see?

Interrogative pronoun as adverb, —

What fear we then to incense his utmost ire?
What matters it if he come?

Interrogative adjective, —

What man is that?
I can't see *what* time it is.

Correlative adverb, —

What with this, *what* with that.

Indefinite pronoun, —

I will accept *what* you offer.
I'll tell you *what*.

Indefinite, relative, or interrogative pronoun, —

What he says, that will go.

Indefinite, relative adjective, —

We will spend *what* time we can.

Exclamatory adjective, —

What a piece of work is man!

- SENTENCE
  - 1 Definition
  - 2 Elements
    - (1) Principal
      - *a* Subject
        - (*a*) Bare, or grammatical
        - (*b*) Logical
        - (*c*) Apparent
        - (*d*) Real
      - *b* Predicate
        - (*a*) Verb
        - (*b*) Verb and modifiers
        - (*c*) Verb and predicate word
        - (*d*) Verb and object
        - (*e*) Verb, pred. obj., and obj.
        - (*f*) Above with modifiers
    - (2) Subordinate
      - *a* Adjective
        - (*a*) Words
        - (*b*) Phrases
        - (*c*) Clauses
      - *b* Adverbial
        - (*a*) Words
        - (*b*) Phrases
        - (*c*) Clauses
      - *c* Independent
        - (*a*) Vocatives
        - (*b*) Interjections
        - (*c*) Pleonasms
  - 3 Kinds
    - (1) Basis of clauses
      - (1) Simple
      - (2) Compound
      - (3) Complex
      - (4) Compound-complex
    - (2) Basis of use
      - (1) Declarative
      - (2) Interrogative
      - (3) Imperative
      - (4) Exclamatory
      - (5) Mixed
    - (3) Basis of completeness
      - (1) Complete
      - (2) Abbreviated
    - (4) Basis of order
      - (1) Direct
      - (2) Inverted

PART SECOND

SYNTAX

I. THE SIMPLE SENTENCE

DEFINITIONS

Syntax

Definitions

SYNTAX treats of the relations and arrangement of words in sentences. It involves order, agreement, and government. Order has to do with the position and sequence of words. Agreement expresses the relation of an adjective to its noun or pronoun; of a pronoun to its antecedent; of a verb to its subject; and of a predicate or an appositive to the word modified. Government expresses the relation of a verb or a preposition to its object, and of a noun to a possessive modifier.

Sentence

A sentence is the expression of a complete thought in words. A thought is the product of the mental connection of ideas — usually the idea of a person or thing with the idea of another person or thing, quality, action, or condition.

Principal elements

The elements entering into the sentence are principal and subordinate.

Subject

The principal elements are, — the subject, or the name of that about which something is asserted, assumed, questioned, exclaimed, or to which a command

Predicate is given; and the predicate, expressing the assertion, assumption, question, exclamation, or command. The predicate may consist of a verb alone, or a verb accompanied by modifiers of various kinds.

Subordinate elements The subordinate elements are, — words, phrases, and clauses modifying or limiting the meaning of either principal or other subordinate elements; connecting elements joining words, phrases, and clauses; and independent elements, not entering into the structure of the sentence, but logically connected with some other element of the sentence.

Connecting

Phrase A phrase is a preposition and its object, or a participle or an infinitive together with governed words and modifiers.

Clause A clause is an expression having a subject and predicate, expressing less than a complete thought.

Independent Independent elements are words of address, interjections, words of specification, and pleonasms.

Analysis Grammatical analysis consists in separating sentences into their component parts, and explaining the relations of the parts to one another and to the whole sentence.

Parsing Parsing is the description of the words in a sentence, and involves classification, derivation or composition, inflection, properties, and relations.

Diagram The diagram is a graphic method of exhibiting by means of conventional lines or positions the relations of the various parts of a sentence to one another.

On the basis of use, or the manner in which sentences present thought, they are, — declarative, making asser-

Declarative

tions or assumptions; interrogative, asking questions; imperative, expressing commands, demands, wishes; exclamatory, expressing thought accompanied by emotion; and mixed, combining two or more of these uses. Interrogative. Imperative. Exclamative.

On the basis of the number and kinds of clauses, sentences are simple, compound, complex, and compound-complex. The declarative sentence being taken as typical, sentences may be thus defined: —

A simple sentence contains a single independent statement. It may have a compound subject, or a compound predicate, but must be equivalent to a single assertion. Simple.

A compound sentence contains two or more independent statements. Compound.

A complex sentence contains one independent statement, and one or more clauses used adjectively, adverbially, or substantively. Complex.

A compound-complex sentence has two or more independent statements, at least one of which is complex. An independent statement along with all its modifying elements may be called a member. Compound-complex.

A member of a compound or a compound-complex sentence, is one of its largest coördinate, independent divisions. A member may consist of a single clause or a group of clauses set over against a part — single clause or group of clauses — of equal importance. Member.

II. SUBJECT AND PREDICATE

Subject and predicate

Since the verb is the only part of speech that asserts or declares, *i.e.* predicates, every sentence must contain a verb. It must also contain the name of that — the person or thing — concerning which the assertion is made. This name will be a noun or a substitute for a noun, a pronoun, an adjective, an adverb, an infinitive, or any expression used substantively.

The word or expression naming that concerning which an assertion is made, is called the subject of the sentence, or subject of the verb; and the verb making the assertion is called the predicate.

God lives.	Water flows.	Fruit ripens.
Fire burns.	Diamonds sparkle.	I speak.
Clouds float.	Snow falls.	You hear.
Men die.	Flowers bloom.	They listen.

Bare elements

The single word or expression thus used as subject is called the bare or grammatical subject; and the verb alone is called the bare or grammatical predicate.

Complete or logical elements

Very few sentences are made of subject and verb only. Each of these elements may be enlarged or modified in many ways. Yet, however long the sentence may become, it can always be separated into subject and predicate. The complete subject is the noun or equivalent with all modifiers; and the complete predicate, the verb with all its modifiers. These are also called the logical subject and logical predicate.

Order

The natural order of words in the English sentence is, — first, the subject and its modifiers; second, the

verb and its modifiers: any other order makes an inverted sentence.

English nouns have no special form to be used as subject of a verb, nor have most substitutes for nouns. The personal pronouns, however, and the relative and interrogative pronoun *who*, which are declined to show the subjective and objective relation, use only the nominative form as subject of a finite verb, — *I, thou, he, she, we, they, who*: — **Nominative case**

I am (not *me* am).
He and *she* will visit us (not *him* and *her* will visit us).

RULE I. — *The subject of a sentence is in the nominative case.* **Rule**

Nouns only of the third person, singular or plural, are used as subject of a sentence; but a pronoun of the first, second, or third person, and of the singular or plural, may be thus used. The verb, then, so far as it has different forms for person and number, must correspond to its subject: — **Agreement of verb**

He *goes* (not he *goest*).
We *love* (not we *loves*).
Men *live* (not men *lives*).

RULE II. — *A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.* **Rule**

Some special cases needing notice are: — **Special constructions**

The impersonal expressions, —

it rains *it goes* hard with him
it is cold *it is* warm *it thunders*

Here the subject, while representing no real person or thing, is a pronoun in the third person singular, with which the verb agrees in form.

The impersonal expressions, —

meseems *methinks*

in which the dative pronoun has become welded to the verb, the impersonal pronoun *it* being dropped.

The impersonal expressions, —

so far as *regards* — as *concerns* — as *becomes*
and the like

in which the personal pronoun *it* is dropped.

Some archaic expressions where no subject is expressed, —

To him that hath *shall be given.*

The verb with a collective noun as subject, where the agreement is with the sense, is singular if the collection is the subject, and plural if the individuals in the collection are subject: —

The crowd *blocks* the street.
The crowd *raise* their hats.
One-half of the house *was* occupied.
One-half of the soldiers *were* wounded.

Two or more singular nouns connected by *and*, and designating the same person or thing, take a singular verb: —

The secretary and treasurer (Mr. Jones) *is* present.
By the yellow Tiber *was* tumult and affright.

Note. — Formerly in English, as at present in some other languages, the *dative* was the case of a noun or pronoun expressing the relation now indicated by *to* or *for*.

Two or more singular nouns connected by *and*, and designating different persons and things, take a plural verb: —

Death and destruction *were* everywhere apparent.
The president and general *enter*, arm in arm.
He and I *are* brothers.

Two or more subjects connected by *or*, and differing in person or number, may take a verb in agreement with the most important, or the nearest; but it is better to give each subject its own verb, or to give the sentence such a turn as will supply a verb having a form common to the different subjects: —

Neither this man nor his parents *have* sinned.
This man *has* not sinned, nor *have* his parents.
Your father or yourself *are* mistaken.
Your father *is* mistaken or you *are*.

Two or more singular nouns connected by *or* or *nor* take a singular verb: —

Rain or hail or snow *is* imminent.
Neither man nor woman, neither youth nor child, *remains*.

A verb used with pronoun subjects differing in person and connected by *and*, prefers the first person to the second, and the second to the third. *I* or *we* + a second or third person pronoun = *we*; *thou* or *you* + a third person pronoun = *you*.

Each, *either*, *neither*, and nouns preceded by these words as well as by *every* and *many a*, take a singular verb; *any* and *none*, and words preceded by *any* and

no, may take either singular or plural verb according to the sense: —

Either tool *answers* the purpose.
Many a flower *is* born to blush unseen.

Agreement of pronoun

You, even when its antecedent is singular, takes a plural verb. *Who*, *which*, and *that*, relative pronouns, take a verb in agreement with their antecedents: —

I that *speak* to you had a brother once.
Thou that *stealest*, dost thou judge?

Rule

RULE III. — *A verb used with a subject pronoun agrees with the antecedent of the pronoun in person and number.*

The simple sentence may have for its subject: —

What may be subject

A noun, — *Hearts* beat. *Blood* circulates.
Two or more nouns, — *Heaven* and *earth* endure.
A pronoun, — *Thou* knowest. *She* breathes.
Two or more pronouns, — *We*, *ye*, *they* are. *None* cares. *Either* dies.
An infinitive, — *To live* suffices. *Eating* pleases. *For him to go* would be ruin.
Converted adjectives, — The *good*, the *true*, and the *beautiful* survive. The *Irish* submit.
A prepositional phrase, — *Toward the earth's centre* is down. *From here to Ogden* is sixty miles.
Converted adverbs, — The *above* remains true.
Any expression used as a noun, — *By and by* is easily said. *Too swift* arrives as tardy as *too slow*.

Compound subject

Several nouns or their equivalents may form the subject of a simple sentence — usually called a compound

subject — if the action is asserted of what they stand for as of a unit: —

Presidents, *professors*, and *students* (= the college) rejoiced.

Compound predicate

So several verbs may form the predicate — called the compound predicate — of a simple sentence, if taken together they express a single action: —

The prisoners *turned*, *fled*, *disappeared* (= escaped).

Punctuation

Punctuation. I. A complete sentence begins with a capital letter, and if declarative or imperative, is followed by a period.

Punctuation. II. Words in a series, of the same part of speech, in the same grammatical construction, and not connected by conjunctions, are separated by commas.

Punctuation. III. A logical subject when long, when ending in a verb, or when consisting of parts separated by commas, is usually separated from its verb by a comma.

Diagram systems

Note. — There are many systems of diagraming, but all depend upon the same simple principle. The essential elements of the simple sentence are thus placed: —

Subject Predicate

Or a single line may be drawn beneath, with or without a perpendicular line separating these elements: —

Subject Predicate

Subject | Predicate

Or a double perpendicular line may separate subject and verb, and a single line separate verb and complement, *i.e.* object or predicate word: —

Subject || Verb | Complement

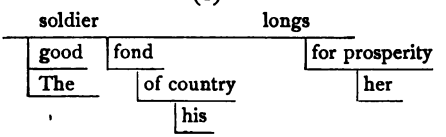
Or each element may have its own line, an arrangement which for many reasons is preferable: —

Subject | Predicate verb | Object

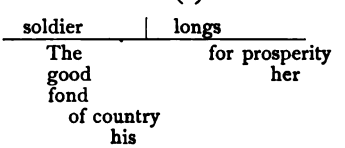
The subordinate elements, except expressions in apposition, are then in some way grouped below the words with which they are connected: —

The good soldier, fond of his country, longs for her prosperity.

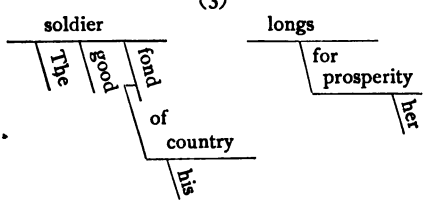
(1)



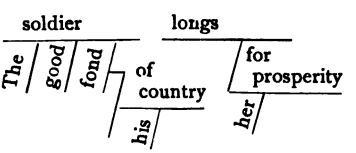
(2)



(3)



(4)



The advantages in this last system are that all simple modifiers read *toward* the word to which they belong, and the diagram economizes space. No diagram has yet been invented that shows plainly all the grammatical relations, and probably none will be. Any elaborate system would probably break down from its own weight.

Order of analysis

The method and order of analysis are matters of importance. The following scheme covers all the elements of any sentence: —

1. Kind of sentence, —
   (*a*) Simple, compound, complex, compound-complex.
   (*b*) Declarative, interrogative, imperative, exclamatory, mixed.

2. Kinds of clauses, or of members and clauses.

3. Principal elements of the sentence, or of the first member, if the sentence is compound.
   (*a*) Subject, — peculiarity (grammatical, logical, provisional, impersonal).
   (*b*) Verb, — transitive, intransitive, factitive, copulative.
   (*c*) Complement — object, predicate word.

4. Modifiers of the subject, and of its modifiers.

5. Modifiers of the verb, and of its modifiers.

6. Modifiers of the predicate word or object, and of its modifiers.

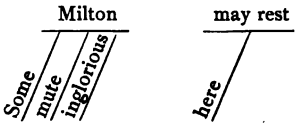
7. Principal elements of the second member, and following members, in the same order.

8. Connectives, as reached.

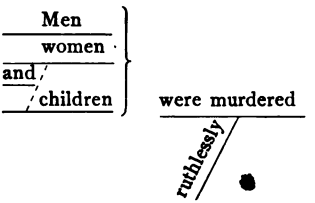
Note. — Two considerations are to be kept in mind in developing any system, — the clearness with which relations may be shown or suggested, and the economy of space. Moreover, any system carried out in great detail is liable to become an end in itself, rather than the means of indicating grammatical relations. Suggestions will be made for a diagram indicating different constructions as they occur.

9. Independent expressions, — vocatives, exclamations, pleonasms.

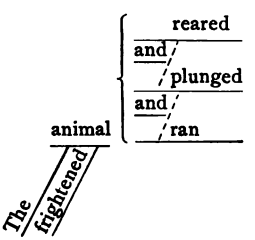
Note. — 1. Some mute, inglorious Milton here may rest.



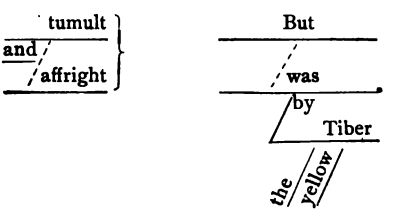
2. Men, women, and children were ruthlessly murdered.



3. The frightened animal reared and plunged and ran.



4. But by the yellow Tiber
Was tumult and affright.



EXERCISES

1. It freezes. It strikes twelve.

2. It rains, hails, thunders, and lightens.

3. Blood tells. Parentage, training, and experience unite.

4. Pine, maple, beech, walnut, and oak burn.

5. Trout swim. Salmon and pike flourish.

6. He or you must pay. He and you must pay.

7. The throng is dense. The throng are silly.

8. Hangers-on annoy. Politics rages.

9. The matron and cook has arrived.

10. The saint, the husband, and the father prays.

11. Each tarries. Both leave. Any wrong is too much

12. Neither life nor death nor principalities nor powers nor height nor depth nor any other creature, can separate us from the love of God.

13. No man liveth to himself. None knew her but to love her.

14. The foolish and the dead never change.

15. It were better to consent.

16. The last of all the bards was he.

17. Hence originated their contempt for terrestrial distinctions.

18. Never was heard a single word.

19. Few and short were the prayers we said.

20. To be or not to be is the question.

21. So Joris broke silence with "Yet there is room."

- **Modifying Elements**
  - 1 Adjectives
    - *a* Predicate
    - *b* Attributive
    - *c* Appositive
    - *d* Factitive
    - *e* Substitute for adverb
  - 2 Adverbs
    - *a* Pure
    - *b* Interrogative
    - *c* Conjunctive or relative
    - *d* Substitute for adjective
  - 3 Nouns
    - *a* Possessive
    - *b* Appositive
    - *c* Predicate nominative or objective
    - *d* Adverbial objective
    - *e* Nominative absolute
    - *f* Substitute for adjective
  - 4 Pronouns
    - *a* Possessive
    - *b* Appositive
    - *c* Predicate nominative or objective
    - *d* Nominative absolute
  - 5 Infinitives
    - *a* As adjective (see adj.)
    - *b* As adverb
  - 6 Participles
    - *a* As adjective (see adj.)
    - *b* Formally as adjective, logically as adverb
    - *c* Adverbial predicate
  - 7 Phrases
    - *a* Prepositional
      - (*a*) Adjective
      - (*b*) Adverb
    - *b* Infinitive
      - (*a*) Adjective
      - (*b*) Adverb
    - *c* Participial
      - (*a*) Adjective
      - (*b*) Adverb

III. PREDICATE NOMINATIVE

Few sentences are composed of nouns or pronouns and verbs alone. These elements may be modified or completed in many ways. Verbs have already been classed into those of incomplete and those of complete predication. Of the verbs of incomplete predication, some require after them a word or expression relating to the subject, and in some way modifying or describing it. **Incomplete predicate**

Hearing the assertions,

We *are* ——.	I *feel* ——.
You *look* ——.	They *seem* ——.
The man *appears* ——.	It *was* ——.

the mind is held in suspense; the assertions are incomplete, and the mind is unsatisfied until something is added; for example: —

We *are weary.*	I *feel hungry.*
You *look ill.*	They *seem soldiers.*
The man *appears vigorous.*	It *was his brother.*

A word thus added, a noun, pronoun, adjective, or equivalent, because it completes the predicate and is really a part of the asserting element, is called a predicate word; and because it is brought by the verb into relation with the subject nominative, it is called a nominative word; or putting the two descriptive expressions together, we may call it a predicate nominative. **Predicate word**

The predicate nominative comes regularly after the verb. **Place of**

A verb thus connecting a qualifying or limiting word with the subject, is called a copulative verb or copula, a coupler.

Copulative verbs

The copulative verbs are not numerous. The verb *be* is the most common: —

I *am* weary. We *were* brothers. It *was* they.

Indeed, any brief statement may be resolved into an equivalent statement through some form of the verb *be* and a predicate word: —

I sing = I *am* a singer.
I beg = I *am* begging, or I *am* a beggar.
I give = I *am* giving, or I *am* a giver, or I *am* generous.

Other copulative verbs may be classed according to their meaning.

Those signifying to come into being or condition: —

become *get* *grow* *prove* *turn* *wax*

Men *become* weary. He *proved* a capable officer.
The days *were getting* shorter. His hair *had turned* gray.
The fields *had grown* green. Jacob *waxed* strong.

Those signifying to come into view under a certain aspect: —

appear *look* *seem* *show* *move*

Some figures monstrous and misshaped *appear*.
All *looks* yellow to the jaundiced eye.
The sound *must seem* an echo to the sense.
His face *shows* horrible and grim.
Those *move* easiest who have learned to dance.

Those signifying to present qualities to other senses than sight: —

feel *smell* *sound* *taste*

Man *feels* strong in speaking truth.
Violets in the green *smell* sweet.
Thy voice *sounds* hollow.
The fruit *tastes* ripe.

Some verbs of position and motion: —

arise *come* *fall* *go* *lie* *run* *sit* *stand*

He *arose* whole.
Many *fell* dead.
The steed *went* lame.
The giant *lay* stunned.
Their children *had run* wild.
Stand firm.
Sit erect.

The passive voice of factitive verbs: —

to be called *to be chosen* *to be elected*
to be made *to be appointed*

And his name *was called* John.
The captains *have been made* majors.
Stephen *was appointed* an apostle.
Lincoln *was elected* president.

With the last two classes of verbs the predicate verb is often introduced by *as* or *for*: —

He went out *as* captain and returned *as* major.
The young man was chosen *for* private secretary.

Adjective or adverb

Whether the words following these verbs should be predicate adjectives or adverbs depends on the purpose of their use. If used to modify the subject, they should

be adjectives; if to modify the action of the verb, they should be adverbs: —

We appear *graceful, i.e. we* are graceful.
We appear *gracefully, i.e.* the appearance is graceful.
We feel *warm, i.e. we* are warm.
We feel *warmly, i.e.* the feeling is warm.
We look well (adj.), *i.e.* we are in good health.
We look well (adv.), *i.e.* our looks are pleasing — we are good-looking.

In such expressions as, —

the tea smells *strong* the music sounds *delightful*
the wine tastes *sweet*

usage sanctions the adjective.

Adverbial predicate

The modifying force of the predicate adjective used with verbs of position and motion and some others, is often distributed between the subject and the verb: —

John went *bawling* down the street.
The sentinel stands *erect* and *firm*.
The water came *tumbling* and *roaring*.
His voice rang *loud* and *clear*.

Here the adjectives not only describe the subject, but indicate some peculiarity of the action expressed by the verb. Adjectives thus used may be called adverbial predicates.

Nominative case

Since the predicate noun or pronoun modifies the subject of the verb by representing the same person or thing, it would naturally be in the same case. Nouns do not distinguish by their forms the nominative case from the objective; but when pronouns are found in

this construction with a finite verb, they are in the nominative case: —

It is *I*. It was *they*. If it were *she*. Had I been *he*.

What predicate word may b

The predicate nominative in a simple sentence may be any of the following, either alone or with modifiers: —

A noun, — Thou art the *man*.
A pronoun, — I am *he*. It is no *other*.
An adjective, — Hope springs *eternal*.
An infinitive, — He seemed *to tremble*.
A participle, — The fiend lies *stretched* out.
A phrase, — Satan was now *at hand*.
A converted adverb, — The feast is *over* in Branksome tower.

The colloquial expressions, —

it is *me* it is *her* it is *him* if I were *them*
and the like

can hardly be justified by literary usage.

Place of predicate

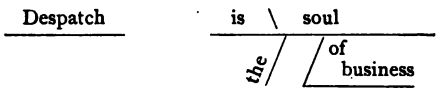
The natural position of the predicate noun, pronoun, or adjective is after the verb. In poetry, and for emphasis in exalted prose, an inverted order is sometimes used: —

Sweet are the uses of adversity.
A chieftain's *daughter* seemed the maid.
Loud rang a voice upon the blast.
Hearts, like apples, are *hard* and *sour*.
So Susan became a *teacher*.
A *man* he was to all the country dear.
He it was that bade me come.

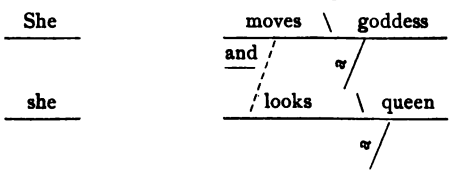
Rule RULE IV. — *A predicate nominative noun or pronoun agrees in case with the subject which it modifies:* —

(But see possessive, and complement of copulative infinitive.)

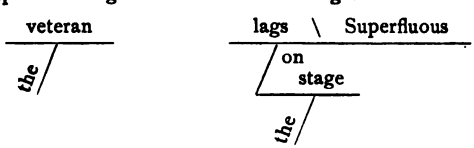
1. Despatch is the soul of business.



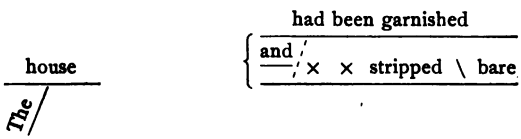
2. She moves a goddess and she looks a queen.



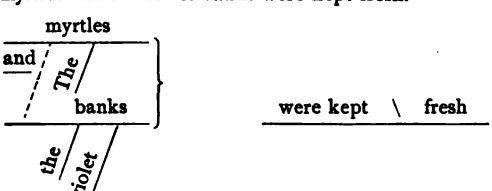
3. Superfluous lags the veteran on the stage.



4. The house had been garnished and stripped bare.



5. The myrtles and the violet banks were kept fresh.



EXERCISES

1. I am a jealous God.
2. Frederick became King of Prussia.
3. They remained true to the cause.
4. The girl sat perched on a heap of loose stones.
5. She would often get dislodged from her perch.
6. A train-band captain eke was he.
7. The temptation proved irresistible.
8. Washington has been styled father of his country.
9. Men may live fools. The doors blew open.
10. Now is the winter of our discontent made glorious summer.
11. The maple grove has turned crimson.
12. Being in a ship is being in jail.
13. Wide is the gate and narrow is the way.
14. Man's soul has been proclaimed immortal.
15. He had been left solitary on the field.
16. Sleep has been called the friend of woe.
17. Their secret foul offence shall be stripped bare.
18. I can hardly continue steadfast.
19. She looked every inch a queen.
20. The sword felt cold and damp.
21. She stood silent. Her wedding bell rang merry.
22. She was going mad. My blood ran cold.
23. Here it comes sparkling, and there it lies darkling.
24. He would make an excellent auctioneer or town-crier.
25. The sun shone bright. The lake lay gleaming in the valley.
26. Three fishers went sailing out into the west.
27. Perhaps it may turn out a song, perhaps turn out a sermon.
28. I was born an American; I live an American; I shall die an American.

IV. OBJECTS DIRECT AND INDIRECT

Verbs of being and condition

The verbs *be* and *exist*, expressing mere being, and the verbs

sleep *doze* *rest* *sicken* *die* *decay*

and many others, expressing mere condition, may form a complete predicate. The same is true of many verbs expressing action: —

go *come* *sit* *live* *listen* *rejoice* *grieve* *worry*

Intransitive

Both of these classes are verbs of complete predication; and the former may be called verbs of being or condition, or with the latter be classed as intransitive verbs.

To approach the latter class in another way: Verbs expressing action are of two kinds, — those expressing a simple action complete in itself, —

lie *wait* *fall* *rise* *flow*

and those expressing an action incomplete, unless it is received by some person or thing: —

hit *kill* *take* *buy* *catch*

Transitive

Of these verbs, the former class are called intransitive, *i.e.* the action does not pass along to a receiver; the latter class are called transitive, *i.e.* the action is thought of as passing along to some person or thing, receiving, enduring, suffering, or in some way affected by the action.

The word representing this person or thing is called the object of the verb. **Object**

When we hear the expressions, —

he *waits* rain *falls* water *flows* steam *rises*

we know the whole assertion has been made.

When, however, we hear such expressions as, —

he *hits* —— they *take* —— the boy *caught* ——

the meaning is evidently incomplete, and we expect some word to be added, naming that toward which the action is directed: —

he *hits* the *ball* they *take* the *fort* the boy *caught fish* **Illustration**

The terms, transitive and intransitive, apply properly to verbs of action only.

Whether a verb is copulative, intransitive, or transitive, depends on its meaning and use. The same verb may be used in several ways: — **Classed by meaning**

He *makes* by the transaction (intransitive).
These principles *make* for righteousness (intransitive).
He *makes* an excellent commander (copulative).
He *makes* brooms (transitive).
He *makes* the street straight (transitive-factitive).

Many verbs of condition acquire a causative meaning, thus becoming transitive; or they take after them a modifier of the subject, thus becoming copulative: —

My elder brother *sickened* then and died (condition).
It *sickened* him to death (transitive).
There I'll *rest* after much turmoil (condition).
I upon this bank will *rest* my head (transitive).

Thou shalt *rest* unquestioned (copulative).
Sit and *rest* you (transitive-reflexive).

Transitive made intransitive

Verbs ordinarily transitive become intransitive when they signify simply the doing of the action, leaving out of account the person or thing affected by the action. There will then be neither expressed nor understood object: —

The parson *prayed* a long *prayer* and *preached* a long *sermon*.
He hears the parson *pray* and *preach*.
They *sang* psalms, hymns, and sacred songs.
She *sang* like a lark.

Intransitive made transitive

Verbs ordinarily intransitive become transitive in several ways: —

Causative

By assuming a causative meaning, —

The horse *walks* slowly.
The groom *walks* the *horse* slowly.
The raft *floated* down the stream.
The lumberman *floated* the *raft* down the stream.

Cognate

By taking an object naming the action asserted by the verb itself, and called a cognate object, —

He *sleeps* and *dreams*.
He *sleeps* a fitful *sleep*, and *dreams* uncanny *dreams*.
They *live* in plenty.
They *live* a *life* of luxury and ease.

Note. — This cognate object may, in many instances, be resolved into an adverbial objective: —

She dances a *jig* = She dances *this way* = She dances in a certain manner, or through a certain figure.
He sleeps a fitful *sleep* = He sleeps *fitfully*.

By undergoing a slight variation in meaning, — **Changed meaning**

She *looked* carefully about the cage.
She *looked* the *animal* squarely in the eye.
Soft eyes *looked love* to eyes that looked again.

By assuming a factitive force, and connecting a modifying element with the object, a reflexive pronoun, or other word, — **Factitive**

A child *will talk* incessantly.
The children *talked* their *mother tired.*
The boy *talked himself hoarse.*
The babe *cried* lustily.
The babe *cried itself to sleep.*
The listener *yawned.*
The bored company *might yawn* their *jaws out of joint.*

By taking an impersonal object, — **Impersonal**

I'll *queen it* no inch farther.
They *frolic it* along. Then *foot it* home.

By taking a reflexive pronoun alone as object, — **Reflexive**

He *basked* in the sun.
He *basked him* in the sun.
She rose again and *bowed her* to the people.

The word, a noun or equivalent, thus representing that which is immediately affected by the action expressed by the verb in the active voice, is called the **Direct objec**

Note. — They live a *life* of ease = They live *without labor.*
He struck *me* a *blow* = He struck me *vigorously.*

In sentences like the last, where there is another direct object, the cognate object must be logically an adverbial objective.

direct object. Its relation to the verb is too close to be expressed by any other construction.

Indirect object

Many verbs take along with the direct object, sometimes without it, a word representing that *to* or *for* which the action is performed, or that which is in some way less directly affected by the action. This word is called the indirect object: —

I tossed *him* the ball.
You will buy *them* new books.
We asked *her* many questions.
Forgive *us* our offences.
He paid his *servants* good wages.

Substitute

The relation that is expressed by the indirect object in these sentences may be expressed by prepositional phrases: —

I tossed the ball *to him*.
You will buy new books *for them*.
We asked many questions *of her*.
Forgive *to us* our offences.
He paid good wages *to his servants*.

Indirect alone

Some verbs often take either a direct or an indirect object alone. In such cases, each seems the direct object. Their true relation is seen only by putting the two objects together; thus, —

We pay the *men*. We pay good *wages*.
We pay the *men* good *wages*.
God forgives *men*. God forgives *sin*.

God forgives *men* their *sins*.
I owe *you*. I owe a *dollar*.
I owe *you* a *dollar*.

Case of object

Nouns have the same form whether used as object or subject; but personal pronouns (except *it*) and the interrogative and relative *who*, have a special form when used as object: —

The ball hit *him*. We saw *them*.
We saw *her whom* the ball hit.

We say, therefore, that nouns and pronouns used as the objects of verbs must be in the objective case, or that transitive verbs govern the objective case. The case of the direct object corresponds to the *accusative* of other languages, and the case of the indirect object, to the *dative*.

Place of objects

The natural place for both objects is after the verb, the indirect preceding the direct; but in poetry, and for emphasis, the order is sometimes changed. A phrase

Note. — The words, —

like *unlike* *near* *nigh* *opposite*

with their degrees of comparison are used either as adjectives or adverbs, and are followed by an objective noun or pronoun representing that toward which the action or quality is directed. This noun or pronoun may, like an indirect object, be replaced by a prepositional phrase introduced by *to* or *unto*: —

He looks like my *father*.
He looks like *unto* my father.
Near a new-made *grave*.
Near *to* a grave that was newly made.

expressing the relation of the indirect object usually follows the direct object: —

Antony addressed the *Romans*.
And thus the *son* the fervent *sire* addressed.
He wrought the *castle* much *annoy*.
Him I envy his good *fortune*.
His good *fortune* I envy *him*.
He paid a full week's salary *to each man*.

Rules

RULE V. — *Verbs expressing action are either transitive or intransitive. A transitive verb takes a direct object representing that immediately affected by the action, and sometimes an indirect object representing that to or for which the action is performed.*

RULE VI. — *The object of a transitive verb, direct or indirect, is in the objective case.*

Change to passive

In the normal sentence with the verb in the active voice, the subject, or word representing the actor, is emphatic. To shift the emphasis to the receiver of the act, the voice of the verb is changed, and the direct object of the verb in the active voice is made subject of the verb in the passive voice, the indirect

Note. — The 'ethical dative,' a sort of indirect object representing the person interested, is practically obsolete in modern English: —

A woman claps *you* an iron cap on her head.
He kills *me* a dozen of Scots at a breakfast.

Another use of the 'ethical dative,' the reflexive pronoun after an intransitive verb, is likewise obsolete: —

Step *you* out. Come *thee* on.

object, if there be one, remaining as an adverbial modifier: —

Burr shot Hamilton.
Hamilton was shot by Burr.
In Germany the *government* controls the railroads and the telegraph system.
In Germany the *railroads* and the telegraph *system* are controlled by the government.
They paid *us* the money.
The *money* was paid *us*, or *to us*.

Sometimes, however, the indirect object of the active verb is made subject of the passive verb, the direct object becoming an adverbial modifier (retained object): —

The employer gave each *laborer* a neat *cottage*.
Each *laborer* was given a neat *cottage* by the employer.

Direct object

The direct object of a verb in a simple sentence may be the following, either alone or with modifiers: —

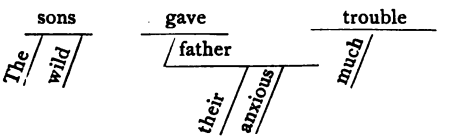
A noun, — The child loves its *rattle*.
A pronoun, — The rattle pleases *it*.
A converted adjective, — We praise the *good*.
A converted adverb, — We understand the *above*.
An infinitive, — They love *to dance*. They love *dancing*.
Any expression less than a clause, used substantively.

Indirect object

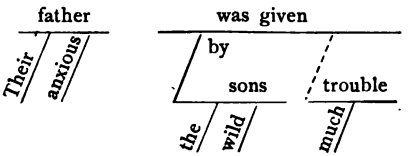
The indirect object of a verb in a simple sentence may be: —

A noun, — I'll leave my *son* my virtuous deeds.
A pronoun, — I mean *you* no harm.
A converted adjective, — We'll give the *good* all praise.
An infinitive, — They gave *dancing* the preference.

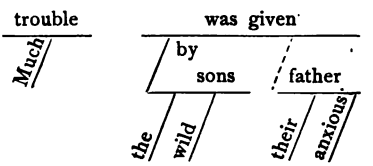
Note. — 1. The wild sons gave their anxious father much trouble.



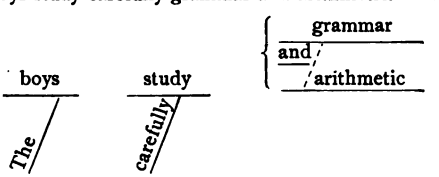
2. Their anxious father was given much trouble by the wild sons.



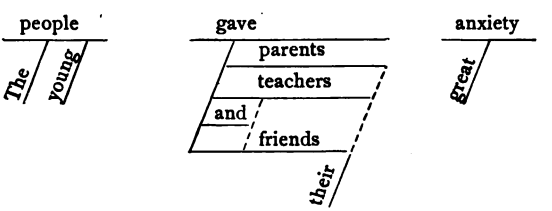
3. Much trouble was given their anxious father by the wild sons.



4. The boys study carefully grammar and arithmetic.



5. The young people gave their parents, teachers, and friends great anxiety.



EXERCISES

1. I have not loved the world.

2. Years steal fire from the mind.

3. Heaven gives its favorites early death.

4. Charity shall cover a multitude of sins.

5. The tongue can no man tame.

6. Evil communications corrupt good manners.

7. Out of thine own mouth, I will judge thee.

8. I wish you prosperity with better taste.

9. The martial airs of England encircle still the earth.

10. Men may come and men may go, but I go on forever.

11. And from his ashes may be made
The violet of his native land.

12. Unto dying eyes
The casement slowly grows a glimmering square.

13. God gives us love. Something to love he lends us.

14. Your old men shall dream dreams. Your young men shall see visions.

15. I built my soul a lordly pleasure house.

16. I will live the life of the righteous and die the death of the holy.

17. They ask me no questions, and I tell them no lies.

18. Here once the embattled farmers stood,
And fired the shot heard round the world.

19. A thing of beauty is a joy forever;
Its loveliness increases; it will never
Pass into nothingness.

20. Through life's dark road his sordid way he wends,
An incarnation of fat dividends.

21. The selfish defeat themselves; the generous win themselves abiding friendships.

22. Merry elves, their morrice pacing,
Trip it deft and merrily.

23. I have fought a good fight; I have run a hard race; I have finished the course.

24. Love taught him shame;
Shame taught the sweet civilities of life.

25. She loved the offender and forgave the offence.

26. He struck me plainly; I could too well feel his blow.

27. Sorrow had struck too many blows upon this face and made the deeper wounds.

28. A plucky man will never strike his foe a blow in the back.

29. The rustic beauty queens it in her little world.

30. I sit me down a pensive hour to spend.

31. I do forgive thee thy rankest fault, and pay thee all the debt.

32. My husband hies him home; thither will I wend my way.

33. Men, wives, and children, stare, cry out, and run.

34. I will stare him out of his wits.

35. We run ourselves aground. You will never run mad.

36. I cry your honor mercy. She cried herself weary.

37. My nearer brother pined, his mighty heart declined.

38. I must decline your generous offer.

V. OBJECTIVE OR FACTITIVE PREDICATE

Factitive verb

A certain class of transitive verbs signifying, in general, *to make* or *to cause*, and hence called factitive verbs, seem to leave an assertion incomplete even after an object is expressed, and we expect some descriptive word to be added: —

The jury *pronounced* the prisoner —— *guilty* = The jury *convicted* the prisoner.
They *chose* Stephens —— captain = They *promoted* Stephens.
The Jews *made* the tallest man —— *king* = The Jews *crowned* the tallest man.
The mother *sang* the child —— *asleep* = The mother *quieted* the child.

These added words are evidently descriptive modifiers of the direct object, and are made so through the verb. From the second sentence in the respective pairs, it is seen that the added word is really a part of the predicate, completing its meaning: —

Illustrations

Pronounce guilty = convict.
Choose captain = promote.
Make king = crown.
Sing to sleep = quiet.

Examples in which verbs are derived from corresponding adjectives may make this still plainer: —

He *makes* the path *straight* = He *straightens* the path.
They *painted* the house *red* = They *reddened* the house.
Education *renders* men *civil* = Education *civilizes* men.

Factitive predicate

A noun or an adjective, or an equivalent of either, thus brought by a factitive verb into relation with the direct object as a modifier at the same time completing the predicate, is called an objective, or factitive predicate.

Passive voice

A factitive verb in the passive voice becomes a copulative verb, and the predicate objective becomes a predicate nominative, still modifying what was the object of the active, but is now the subject of the passive verb: —

They beat him *dead.* He was beaten *dead.*
The sun turns vinegar *more sour.* Vinegar is turned *more sour.*
Attention held them *mute.* They were held *mute.*
He named his son *John.* His son was named *John.*

***As* and *for* introductory**

Sometimes *as* or *for* is used as a sort of connective, introductory to a predicate objective: —

They elected Mr. Smith *as* chairman.
They chose *for* mayor the wealthiest citizen.
He selected his six sons *as* pall-bearers.
His six sons were selected *as* pall-bearers.
The wealthiest citizen was chosen *for* mayor.

Many verbs, not ordinarily meaning *to make, to cause,* or *to bring about* by the action which the verb expresses, assume such a meaning and take a predicate objective: —

Verbs made factitive

She *sweeps* the floor *clean.*
Lightning *struck* him *blind.*
The cold weather *froze* the roads *dry.*
They *sang* their throats *sore.*

Intransitive verbs, as well as transitive, frequently become factitive, especially by the addition of a reflexive object: —

They *danced themselves* ill.
The prisoner shot *himself dead.*
Children *run themselves weary.*
The wind *sighed itself to rest.*

Rule

RULE VII. — *A word brought by a factitive verb into relation with the direct object as a modifier, is called an objective or factitive predicate; and if this word is a noun or pronoun it is in the objective case (or in the possessive, and substituted for a word in the objective).*

Place

The predicate objective regularly follows the object which it modifies.

Factitive and appositive

The factitive predicate must not be confounded with the adjective modifying the object appositively: —

We found the child *sleeping.*
You see the clouds *flying, accumulated, fallen.*

or complement

Nor must it be confounded with a noun or adjective the complement of the infinitive *to be* understood, and modifying a word, at the same time subject of the infinitive and object of the predicate verb: —

We thought her (*to be*) *dying.*
We believed him (*to be*) an honest *man.*

Doubtful cases

It is sometimes difficult to draw the line. A verb may be a factitive verb and take an objective predicate, when we accept the speaker's judgment, or take

the meaning of the sentence from the speaker's point of view; otherwise not: —

I *consider* the security *sufficient.*
We *warrant* him a soldier *tried.*

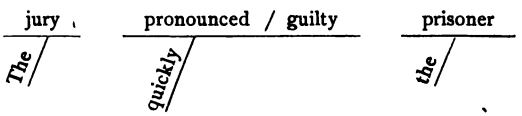
Factitive predicate

You *think* him (to be) *humble;* God *accounts* (?) him *proud.*

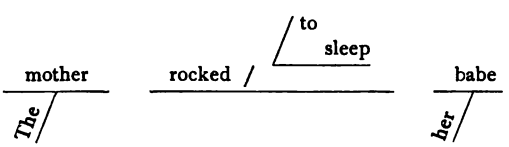
The factitive predicate in a simple sentence may be: —

A noun, — Jones appointed Brown his *agent.*
An adjective, — Mary dyed the coat *brown.*
A participle, — Showers kept the stream *running.*
A phrase, — The mother rocked the babe *to sleep.*
A substitute possessive, — I will proclaim the crown *yours.*

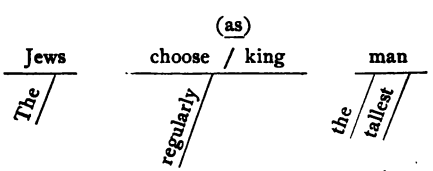
1. The jury quickly pronounced the prisoner guilty.



2. The mother rocked her babe to sleep.



3. The Jews regularly choose the tallest man as king.



EXERCISES

1. Ye call me chief, and ye do make me proud.
2. I have kept my vow inviolate: now name me wife.
3. I'll make thee glorious by my pen and famous by my sword.
4. He shall hold thee something better.
5. He makes his house a solitude and calls it peace.
6. Such parting strikes poor lovers dumb.
7. Before reading he thought himself hungry.
8. This would render my sword of no use.
9. Sorrow will turn a black beard white, and make a curled pate bald.
10. Death leaves the mansion tenantless, and the broad fields solitary.
11. Thou hast appointed them justices of the peace, to call poor men before them.
12. God created man in his own image: male and female created he them.
13. The cradle rocks us nearer to the tomb.
14. The silly jades must oft be kissed good-natured.
15. Disease and disappointment drove him mad.
16. They call drinking deep dyeing scarlet. They drink their cups empty.
17. He shall be eaten to death with a rust.
18. Her virgin voice lulls babes asleep.
19. All the rain in the sweet heavens will not wash it clean again.
20. We will seek out some desolate shade and weep our sad bosoms empty.
21. Yet Chloe sure was formed without one spot.
22. No man can be appointed censor of the American press.
23. The breeze soon blew the canvas dry.
24. His fiery soul fretted his pygmy body to decay.

VI. ATTRIBUTIVE AND APPOSITIVE MODIFIERS

Predicate adjectives

We have seen that a noun or its equivalent used as the subject of a sentence, may be modified by a noun or an adjective through a copulative verb, and that a noun or its equivalent used as the object of a sentence, may be modified by a noun or an adjective through a factitive verb. These have been called predicate modifiers. But both adjectives and nouns quite as frequently modify nouns or their equivalents more directly, and not through a verb; and these more direct modifiers may belong to nouns in any of their various offices in a sentence.

Assertion

The predicate modifier helps to *assert* some quality, characteristic, or condition of the subject or object. The more direct modifier merely *mentions* a quality, characteristic, or condition, as belonging to, and helping to describe that which a noun in any office names; thus in the expression, —

the man *is feeble*,

Mention

the adjective, *feeble*, is part of an assertion of condition; while in the expression, —

the *feeble* man,

the adjective only mentions a condition.

The expression, —

my friend *is* a *lawyer*,

is an assertion of character; while

my *lawyer* friend,

only mentions a characteristic.

Attributive

A qualifying adjective or a descriptive noun thus added to a noun or pronoun, is called an attributive modifier; *i.e.* it 'attributes,' or ascribes, or attaches to the thing represented by the noun, a certain quality, condition, or characteristic: such an adjective is called attributive, and a noun thus used is a substitute for an attributive adjective.

Place

An attributive adjective, unless modified by a phrase or clause, is regularly placed before the noun modified: —

> One *festive* day, a *political* procession with *flaunting* banners and *reverberating* drums, marched down between the *long* rows of *tall* buildings and trailed its *endless* length of *trampling* footsteps and *most unfrequent* uproar past the ordinary *quiet* House of Seven Gables.

Attributive and appositive nouns

A noun — rarely a pronoun — is sometimes added to another noun or its equivalent, in further description of the person or thing represented. Comparing the descriptive nouns in the sentences, —

> *Sister* Livy is married to *farmer* Williams,

and

> Othello, *the Moor*, loved Desdemona, the *daughter* of Brabantio, a Venetian *senator*,

we see that the relation of *sister* and *farmer* to the modified words is much closer than is the relation between *Moor*, *daughter*, and *senator*, to the words modified. Words used like *sister* and *farmer* may be called attributive nouns; while a noun used like *Moor*, *daughter*, *senator*, is called an appositive, or is said to be in apposition with the noun to which it is added.

As, for, or, of An appositive common noun is sometimes introduced by *as, for, or;* and a proper name, by *of:* —

He was wild *as* a young man.
I know him *for* a man divine and holy.
The Greeks worshipped Zeus, *or* Jupiter.
They live in the State *of* Virginia.

Reciprocal pronouns In sentences containing the reciprocal pronouns, *each other* and *one another*, *each* and *one* may be construed as in apposition with the subject of the action, while *other* is the object, or object of a preposition: —

They love *each other* = They, *each*, love the *other*.
They dislike *one another* = They, *each one*, dislike the others.
They work for *each other* = They work, *each* for *the other*.

Place An appositive expression regularly follows the expression which it modifies.

Rules RULE VIII. — *An appositive noun or pronoun is in the same case as the word with which it is in apposition.*

(But see possessives.)

Punctuation *Punctuation.* IV. An appositive noun or adjective, along with its modifiers, is usually set off from the rest of the sentence by commas.

RULE IX. — *Adjectives modify or limit the meaning of nouns and pronouns.*

Note. — The appositive construction is made to cover the infinitive or an indirect question followed by the demonstrative pronouns *this* and *that* in such expressions as, —

To be or not *to be*, — *that* is the question.
What he thinks that he will utter.
To love God and one's neighbor, — *this* is the whole law.

Appositive adjectives

An adjective or its equivalent is often loosely joined to a noun or pronoun, modifying it indirectly or parenthetically. Such an adjective may be said to modify its noun appositively. The following passage illustrates the difference between attributive and appositive adjectives, the latter suggesting parenthetical descriptive clauses, or clauses of reason and the like: —

> In some nook, *low* and *obscure*, — some narrow closet on the ground floor, *shut*, *locked*, and *bolted*, and the key flung away, — or beneath the marble pavement in a stagnant water puddle with the richest pattern of mosaic-work above, — may lie something, *half-decayed*, still *decaying*, and *diffusing* its death scent through the palace.

Attributive and appositive

A slight difference of meaning is given the sentence by making an attributive adjective appositive: —

> The *young*, *daring*, *ambitious* private soon became captain.
> The private, *young*, *daring*, and *ambitious*, soon became captain.

The difference is much more marked in, —

> I saw the *murdered* man, and
> I saw the man *murdered*.

Here, too, we may see how closely the predicate objective approaches the appositive adjective. In the expression, —

> I *had* the man *murdered*,

Note. — It also covers an infinitive or clause as real subject following the provisional subject *it*, and many other explanatory expressions: —

> It is certain *to rain*.
> It is certain *that the man is alive*.
> The question, *why he went*, was never raised.

the verb is causative and the adjective is plainly predicate objective. Yet it is difficult always to distinguish clearly the appositive use of adjectives from the attributive, on the one hand, and from the predicate objective, on the other. An attributive adjective is usually modified by adverbs only; predicate and appositive adjectives may take more complicated modifiers.

Appositive and factitive

This and that

The demonstrative adjectives *this* and *that* agree in number with the words which they modify.

Modifiers of pronouns

Although pronouns do not take attributive modifiers, they are modified as frequently as nouns by appositive and predicate adjectives: —

Poor in this world's goods, they were *rich* in faith.

She, *weary* from a long day's labor, slept soundly.

We *Americans* are less conventional; you *Frenchmen* are formally polite.

We *all*, like sheep, have gone astray.

As

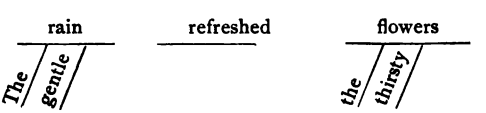
An appositive adjective is sometimes introduced by *as*, used as an appositive connective: —

They considered me *as* superfluous.

The soldiers were accepted *as* sufficient.

He was rejected *as* not available.

Note. — 1. The gentle rain refreshed the thirsty flowers.



An attributive modifier may be: — **Attributive modifier**

An adjective, — the *busy* bee employs *each shining* hour.

A noun, — The *morning* stars sang together.

A participle, — The *dying* man asked for water.

A converted adverb, — Our *then* dictator saw him fight.

An appositive modifier in a simple sentence may be: — **Appositive modifier**

A noun, — My friend, the *hunter*, brings me meat.

A pronoun, — I will do it *myself*. They chained us *each* to a column stone.

An adjective, — *Weary* and *faint*, they abandoned the journey.

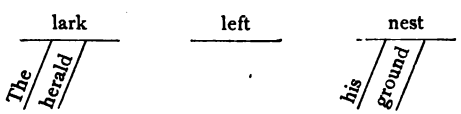
An infinitive, — His promise *to be* there was fulfilled. The chief annoyance, *being detained* in prison, was removed. It is certain *to rain*.

A participle, — *Seeing* his mistake, he made an apology. Truth, *crushed* to earth, shall rise again.

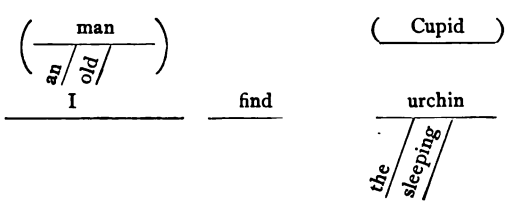
A phrase, — I perceived the wild terror *in his eye*.

---

2. The herald lark left his ground nest.



3. I, an old man, find the urchin, Cupid, sleeping.



EXERCISES

1. I will live unseen, unknown, and die unlamented.

2. He was of manners gentle, of affections mild.

3. The tall student wore a linen blouse, a cloth cap, and green spectacles.

4. Huckleberry, a mischievous little elf, snatched the spectacles.

5. He had won great fame as a narrator of wonderful stories.

6. All people, sisters or brothers, old or young, should cultivate forbearance.

7. The Gorgons were like an awful gigantic kind of insect, — beetles, immense, golden winged, at once ugly and beautiful.

8. Blessed is the influence of one true, loving, human soul, — not calculated by algebra, not deducible by logic, but mysterious, effectual, mighty.

9. The drowning man, urged by the supreme agony, lives in an instant through all his happy and unhappy past.

10. These are the marks of the Christian, — to be good, to do good, to make good.

11. It is frequently unwise to follow great reformers to their homes.

12. I found it best for my soul to be humble before the mysteries of God's dealings.

13. I myself, a baby in my swaddling bands, was looked on as beautiful.

14. You, a wife, are flying from your debt, the debt of a Florentine woman, a wife.

15. I considered my six children as a very valuable present to my country, and looked upon it as my debtor.

16. I have been young and now am old; yet never saw I the righteous man forsaken nor his seed begging bread.

17. We Americans do things differently; we Yankees have a different notion of things.

18. Ye, mariners of England, shall again launch your glorious standard.

19. They assisted me at a time of great affliction, — a kindness not easily forgotten.

20. Religion, blushing, veils her sacred fires,
And unawares Morality expires.

21. The atrocious crime of being a young man I shall neither palliate nor deny.

22. His duty to obey and his policy to be silent were brought into conflict.

23. This mournful truth is everywhere confessed,
'Slow rises worth by poverty depressed.'

24. Three properties belong to wisdom: nature, learning, experience; three things characterize man: person, fate, and merit.

25. I knew myself as his daughter, his the mighty.

26. Laughter, out of place, ill-timed, or bursting forth from a disordered state of feeling, may be the most terrible modulation of the human voice.

27. His college residence made him familiar with the town.

28. I think him mistaken. I find him honest.

29. The professor, kind and affable, yet made his rebuke impressive.

VII. POSSESSIVE CASE OF NOUNS AND PRONOUNS

Possessive case

The possessive case of nouns and pronouns is so called because it is used along with a noun to indicate the possessor or owner, or holder, or originator, real or analogical, of what the noun represents: —

The *man's* farm (ownership).
The *man's* tastes (possession or characteristic).
The *child's* rights (appurtenance).
A *week's* work (figurative belonging or adaptation).
Edison's inventions (origin).

So we speak of *our* faults, *your* virtues, *their* actions, *his* debts, — meaning the faults which we commit, the virtues which we have, the actions which they perform, the debts which he owes.

Thus a noun or pronoun in the possessive case has nearly the force of an attributive adjective, qualifying or limiting the meaning of a noun. It may in many instances be replaced by an adjective: —

The *emperor's* edict = the *imperial* edict.
The *king's* power = *royal* power.

Note. — The possessive is called subjective, if, when the modifier is turned into a clause, the noun in the possessive would be the subject of the clause: —

A *father's* care = the care which a *father* exercises.

It is called an objective possessive, if the noun in the possessive would become object of a clause or infinitive: —

A *father's* care = the care which one must give a father.
The deep damnation of *his* taking off = of taking him off.

Substitute or

It is called an appositive possessive when it means the same as the modified noun: —

The blind old man of *Scio's* rocky isle.

Woman's peculiarities = *feminine* peculiarities.
Man's power = *human* power.
The *Lord's* will = *Divine* will.

Government

A possessive noun or pronoun thus added directly to a noun is said to depend on the noun, or to be governed by the noun; *i.e.* its use as an adjective modifier requires that it should be in the possessive case.

Substituted for

A noun or pronoun in the possessive case may be used in the other constructions of the adjective: —

As predicate nominative, —

The hat is *Joseph's*.
The horses are *ours*.

As predicate objective, —

I will make the estate my *son's*
I account the error *mine*.

As an appositive, —

These jewels, the *queen's*, are wonderful.
These words, *my own*, I will not retract.

With noun understood

With a modified word understood, the possessive may be used in several of the constructions of the noun: —

As subject, —

He and *his* (family) are well.

As object of a verb, —

I saw your friends and my *wife's* (friends).

Note. — The possessive forms of the pronouns *my, thy, his, its, our, your, their, whose, mine, thine, hers, ours, yours, theirs,* have already been classed and discussed as adjectives.

As object of a preposition, —

> I will be at the *baker's* (shop), *Mr. Smith's* (house), *St. Paul's* (cathedral).

Objective with *of*

The possessive relation may be expressed by a noun objective after the preposition *of* as well as by the possessive: —

> *Mr. Jones's* daughter = the daughter *of* Mr. Jones.
> *My* friend = a friend *of* me.

Possessive after *of*

From these two constructions a peculiar idiom has arisen, in which the possessive is put after the preposition, thus making a double possessive modifying nouns preceded by *a, this, that, any, each, every, many, no, other, such,* and some other words.

The construction is used for euphony, emphasis, clearness, or indeterminateness: —

> He wore a sword of the *commodore's*.
> No pointed sentences *of Cæsar's* have come down to us.
> That wife *of Smith's* will be the death of him.
> This introduction *of Atterbury's* has these advantages.
> Any friend *of the candidate's* can give you ballots.
> I was taken to every new toy *of his* and *the squire's*.

Origin of idiom

The origin of this idiom has been assigned to the 'partitive genitive.' Thus, 'a castle *of mine*,' could mean, '*one* of my castles'; so, 'some friends *of his*,' could mean, 'some, *i.e.* a *part*, of his friends.' But in, 'that beautiful face *of hers*,' 'that bald head *of his*,' no such explanation is possible. The idiom probably arose

from some other necessity of the language. Whatever its origin, the possessive thus used after *of* now stands for 'belonging to you, me, him, them,' or, 'my, your, his, their, property or belongings.'

A house of mine = a house belonging to me; and it may mean 'one of my houses,' or, simply 'my house.' The possessive may be disposed of according to the meaning of the expression, either as standing for an objective noun understood after the preposition, or as a possessive used idiomatically after the preposition. **Disposition of**

A noun with a following appositive or a prepositional phrase, often forms a single substantive expression, the last word only taking the possessive sign: — **One possessive sign**

> May the Lord open the *King of England's* eyes.
> I speak in the *emperor my master's* name.

The use of one possessive in apposition with another is not uncommon: —

> I shall visit my uncle's, *Duke of Devon's*, estate.
> His, my *father's*, honor was assailed.

Frequently, too, the appositive possessive noun lacks the possessive sign: — **Appositive possessive lacks sign**

> Behold the heaven is the Lord's, thy God.

The possessive case, like any other, may be the antecedent of a relative pronoun, but it is the custom to **Antecedent of relative**

Note. — For an interesting discussion of this construction see Kellner's *Historical Outlines of English Syntax*, pp. 113–115.

employ the equivalent construction, the objective after *of*: —

Therein shall dwell *his* race who slew his brother.
Therein shall dwell the race of *him* who slew his brother.

Else Compounds of *body* and *one* followed by *else* may take the possessive sign, or the sign may follow *else*: —

Nobody *else's* land will serve the purpose.
You take my hat, I'll take *somebody's* else.

Joint or several Of two or more possessives modifying the same noun and indicating joint ownership or possession, only the last takes a possessive sign; but if they indicate separate ownership or possession, each takes the possessive sign: —

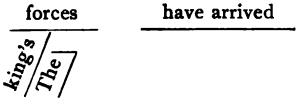
David and Jonathan's friendship.
Safe from the *storm's and prelate's* rage.

Place The possessive usually stands immediately before the word which it modifies.

Rule RULE X. — *A noun or pronoun qualifying or limiting another noun or pronoun, and expressing ownership, possession, origin, or the like, is put in the possessive case.*

Note. — Possessives may stand in a diagram in the same position as the construction or part of speech which they represent.

1. The king's forces have arrived.



Possessive expressions may be: —

Possessive expressions

A noun, — The *man's* opinion.

A pronoun, — *Your* notions and *mine*.

A noun and appositive, — My *son's, Captain Scapegrace's,* bills. My *son John's* plantation.

A noun and phrase, — The *King of Denmark's* ride.

Two or more nouns indicating joint possession, — *Mary and her mother's* journey.

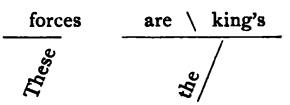
Two or more nouns indicating separate possession, — *Raphael's* and *Michael Angelo's* paintings.

Noun with modified word understood, — He is at the *baker's*.

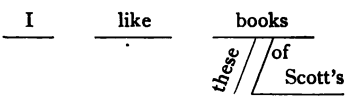
Double possessive, *i.e.* possessive case after *of*, — A friend *of mine*. Books of *Scott's* and *Johnson's*.

---

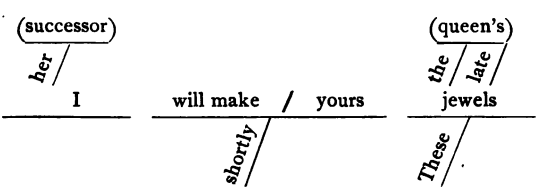
2. These forces are the king's.



3. I like these books of Scott's.



4. These jewels, the late queen's, I, her successor, will shortly make yours.



EXERCISES

1. Knowledge is sorrow's spy.
2. Words are wise men's counters; they are fool's money.
3. Pity's the straightest path to a woman's love.
4. Man is his own star; our acts are our angels.
5. Drink to me only with thine eyes,
   And I will pledge with mine.
6. 'Twas mine, 'tis his, and has been slave to thousands.
7. I shall not let women's weapons, water drops, stain my man's cheeks.
8. I do not set my life at a pin's fee.
9. Our castle's strength will laugh a siege to scorn.
10. The earth is the Lord's, and the fulness thereof.
11. They invited me in the emperor their master's name.
12. People are usually disappointed on their first view of St. Peter's.
13. Those lectures of Lowell's had a great influence with me.
14. Milton lost his sight in liberty's defence — a noble task.
15. The privilege is not theirs, nor is it yours.
16. Thy Maker's will has placed thee there,
    A Maker wise and good.
17. Men's and women's minds are constituted differently.
18. Thou art freedom's now and fame's. A man's house, the king's or the peasant's, is his castle.
19. Charity seeketh not her own.
20. No words of ours can describe the fury of the conflict.
21. This ancient silver bowl of mine tells of good old times.
22. That tongue of thine is not the shortest limb about thee.
23. This same skull was Yorick's skull, the king's jester.
24. I shall confirm the crown mine and my heirs' forever.
25. It is enough: I may call her mine.
26. Every subject's duty is the King's; but every subject's soul is his own.

VIII. ADVERBS

Adverb with verb

As the adjective is the usual modifier of the subject and object of a sentence, so the simple adverb is the most frequent modifier of the predicate verb. It modifies this, however, in only one way, being joined to it directly. It may either precede or follow the simple verb. It may follow the auxiliary, or precede the participle in compound verb forms, according to emphasis, euphony, and the presence or absence of other modifiers: —

Place

He *rarely* spoke.
He spoke *emphatically*.
He was *easily* heard.
He might *easily* have been captured.
He might *then* have been captured *easily*.

The adverb usually follows the direct object: —

Take her *up tenderly*.

Beginning

Sometimes the adverb is placed at the beginning of the sentence, as in this statement; or in —

Then they came back again.
Thus saith the Lord.

Before adjectives

Adverbs (except *enough*) modifying adjectives and other adverbs are placed immediately before them: —

The man was *curiously* jolly.
Mollie acted *very* queerly.

The adverb sometimes qualifies other parts of speech or constructions: —

Preposition

A preposition or a phrase, —

We went *far* beyond our destination.
They began *much* (nearly) at the same time.
He was *greatly* in earnest.

A noun or pronoun attributively, —

Substantive

They are *more* themselves than usual.
The *almost* terror of his looks astonished us.

A noun or pronoun predicatively, —

The sun is *up* (= high, risen).
The stars are *out* (= visible).

A noun or pronoun appositively, —

He lives in the house next *below*.

Clause or sentence

An entire clause or sentence, —

Surely the soul is immortal.
Certainly, no one will contradict this.

Note. — In the expressions, I am *here*, You are *there*, the adverbs, sometimes construed as predicate adjectives, seem rather to retain their natural function, expressing the place of being. This is evident when we compare, You *stand here*, You *lie here*, You *live here*, You *die here*, You *are here*.

The adverbs usually construed as appositive modifiers of nouns may be disposed of as modifying an appositive adjective or participle understood: —

He lives in the house (*standing, being, found*) next *below*.

Or, as modifying the *verb* idea in the noun: —

My stay *there*, = My staying *there*, — was short.
His journey *hither*, = His journeying *hither*, — was rapid.
He died on his way *thence*, = on his journeying *thence*.

The adverb *so* is substituted for a noun, an adjective, or an adverb once used: — *So*

She was a *wife*, but is no longer *so*.
They are *hungry*, or soon will be *so*.

The adverb (or adjective) *only* immediately precedes the word it modifies; if it modifies a clause, however, usually stands at the end: — *Only*

Only *he* eats his dinner (no one else).
He only *eats* his dinner (does not waste).
He eats only *his* dinner (no one else's).
He eats only *dinner* (not supper).
He eats dinner only (does nothing else).

A few adjectives are coming to have a special use as adverbs of degree: — **Adjectives as adverbs**

all and *the*, —

I am *all the* more astonished.

this and *that* (= so), —

He will promise *that* much.
They yield *this* much to religion.

such (= so), —

His eloquence gained him *such* universal popularity.

pretty (= fairly), —

You know him *pretty* well.

mighty (= exceedingly), —

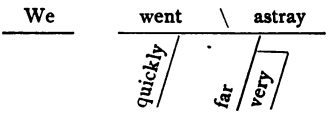
You are *mighty* civil.

The adverb *there* is used as an expletive, or provisional subject, the real subject coming after the verb: — *There*

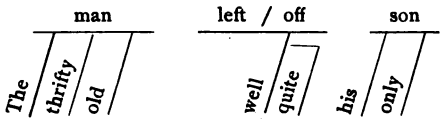
There is silence in the cold grave.

Rule RULE XI. — *Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs, and sometimes phrases and clauses. Some adverbs are used with the force of adjectives.*

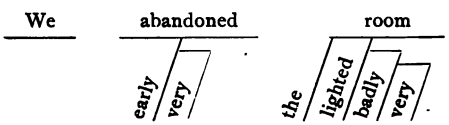
Note. — 1. We went quickly very far astray.



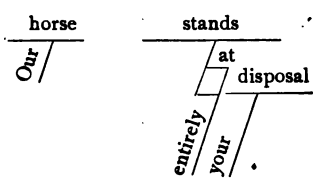
2. The thrifty old man left his only son quite well off.



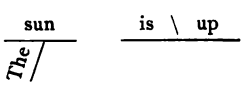
3. We very early abandoned the very badly lighted room.



4. Our horse stands entirely at your disposal.



5. The sun is up.



EXERCISES

1. Thrice did she sink adown.

2. Gayly the troubadour touched his guitar.

3. Ever of thee I am fondly dreaming.

4. The upper crust here are Peel, Stanley, Graham, and so on.

5. We went straight down the crooked lane, and all around the square.

6. There is a higher law. He half knows everything.

7. We have long been friends together, we have loved each other well.

8. The worn-out word, Alone, is so idly spoken, so coldly heard.

9. Near the lake there drooped a willow, long time ago.

10. Earth proudly wears the Parthenon,
As the very best gem upon her zone.

11. The silent organ loudest chants the master's requiem.

12. A cold and clear-cut face I found, perfectly beautiful.
Faultily faultless, icily regular, splendidly null,
Dead perfection.

13. This child is not mine;
I cannot sing it to rest;
I cannot lift it up fatherly, and bless it.

14. Backward, turn backward, O Time, in your flight;
Make me a child again, just for to-night.

15. Hitherto shalt thou come, but no further. He smelleth the battle afar off.

16. Truly the light is sweet. Man shall not live by bread only.

17. Thereby some have entertained angels unawares. Life's poor play is o'er.

18. Outsteps with cautious foot and slow,
And quick, keen glances to and fro,
The outlaw.

19. I have almost matter enough. He cried almost to roaring.

Almost nothing sees miracles.
My tongue cannot impart
My almost drunkenness of heart.

20. We do not act that often jest and laugh.

21. The wills above be done. Well, the gods are above.
The price of a virtuous woman is far above rubies.

22. I am serious: you must be so too. The way hence is your return home.

23. Here follow her vices, close at the heel of her virtues.

24. This concurs directly with the letter. Right through the line they broke.

25. Here all their rage and even their murmurs cease.
Thou wert dignified enough, even to the point of envy.

26. I have been a mother: I am no longer so.

27. Just for a handful of silver he left us,
Just for a ribbon to stick in his coat.

28. Then there is all the more reason for caution.

29. Surely ye are the people.

30. The messenger seemed greatly at a loss.

31. Here are apples enough, ripe enough, and big enough.

IX. ADVERBIAL OBJECTIVE USE OF NOUNS

Adverbial objective

Nouns used as adjective modifiers have a special case form, the possessive, or they are joined to the modified noun by a preposition. Some nouns expressing *measure*, — whether *value*, *weight*, *distance*, *dimension*, or *time*, — and some nouns of *time*, *manner*, and the *place to which*, are used without change of form, and with no connecting word, to modify a verb, adjective, adverb, and sometimes a noun retaining a verbal notion: —

Meaning of words

With verbs

With verbs, —

It costs a *dollar*.
It weighs a *pound*.
It measures ten *inches*.
He walks a *furlong*.
He stands six *feet four*.
The sun shines all *day*.
The rider came full *speed*.
The children all came *home*.

With adjectives

With adjectives, —

The hat is worth a *dollar*.
This string is a *yard* longer.
The river is a *mile* wide.
The house is four *miles* distant.
The pygmy is scarcely three *feet* high.
He cut his visit one *day* short.
I like a house facing two *ways*.
His face was one-*half* black.

With adverbs

With adverbs, —

This is a *deal* more expensive.
The lighter rider was several *pounds* more heavily weighted.
They live a long *distance* off.
He may stay a *week* longer.
We moved twenty *years* ago.

With nouns

With nouns, —

We await his return *home*.
They met him on his visit *West*.
I will relate my dream last *night*.
He mentioned his wanderings that *year*.
He had a pleasant journey this *way*.

The inflected pronouns are not used in this construction, and the form of the noun in modern English does not show the objective case. The usage of cognate languages, however, as well as the fact that the same relation may be expressed by a preposition and its object, indicates that the noun thus used is in the objective case: —

Case determined

He stayed a *day* = He stayed *during a day*.
He comes *full speed* = He comes *at full speed*.
It is *three inches* longer = It is longer *by three inches*.
It is worth *the trouble* = It is worthy *of the trouble*.

Made subject

Occasionally, the adverbial objective following an intransitive verb is made subject of the verb in the passive voice: —

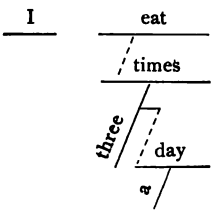
The horse trotted a *mile* in three minutes.
The *mile* was trotted in three minutes.
He walked twenty *miles* a day.
The twenty *miles* were walked in a day.

Note. — In such expressions as, He comes nights, Sundays, and holidays, the *time at which* was formerly expressed by the possessive, as it is in German now. We have come to think of these words, however, as plurals in the objective, and so write them. The adverb *needs*, and the compounds of *ways*, *times*, *wise*, and *days* have the same origin.

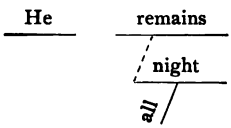
The adverbial objective follows the modified verb or its direct object, and follows a modified noun, but precedes a modified adjective or adverb. **Place**

RULE XII. — *Nouns denoting measure, time, manner, and the place toward which are sometimes used in the objective case adverbially to modify a verb, adverb, adjective, or a noun retaining a verbal force.* **Rule**

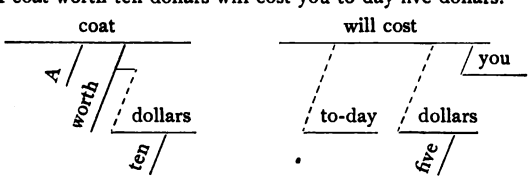
1. I eat three times a day.



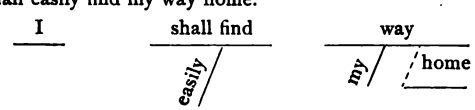
2. He remains all night.



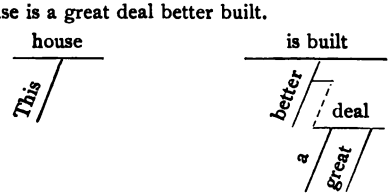
3. A coat worth ten dollars will cost you to-day five dollars.



4. I shall easily find my way home.



5. This house is a great deal better built.



EXERCISES

1. Full fathom five thy father lies.

2. This heavy-headed revel east and west makes us traduced.

3. I shot another arrow the selfsame way.

4. Many a time and oft on the Rialto you have rated me.

5. I will kill thee a hundred and fifty ways. I'll not budge an inch.

6. For the rain, it raineth every day. I know a trick worth two of that.

7. Cowards die many times before their deaths.

8. I am beholden to you for your music (singing) this last night.

9. I have walked all night and gone six miles.

10. A ring he hath of mine worth forty ducats.

11. He bought a field a half-mile long, and measuring one hundred acres.

12. The villain sprang back a few paces.

13. Then thou wast not out three years old.

14. I have looked upon the world four times seven years.

15. I was born not three hours' travel from this very spot.

16. I will bring my wood home faster. I will pay thy graces home. I will strike home.

17. It may chance cost some of us our lives.

18. You may have it your own way many times.

19. Five times every year he was to be exposed in the pillory.

20. Evil news rides post. I shall detain you scarcely an hour longer.

21. Down the street they marched Indian-file.

22. I do not care a snap for her: her beauty is only skin deep.

23. Shakespeare was fifty-two years old the day of his death.

24. The next day at noon we found ourselves fourteen miles from home.

25. An imprudent remark sometimes brings a man into bad repute the rest of his life.

26. They fought him tooth and nail. They bound him hand and foot. They smote the enemy hip and thigh. They struck hit or miss.

27. Action is transitory, a step, a blow, a motion this way or that.

28. I am paid a dollar a day. We are forgiven our debts. He was thriee presented a kingly crown. She was bequeathed her grandmother's jewels.

29. The fish weighed four pounds. The grocer weighed me four pounds of sugar. Thou art weighed in the balance, and found wanting.

30. Yes, faith, I will love thee Fridays and Saturdays and all.

X. NOMINATIVE CASE ABSOLUTE

Adverbial modifier

A noun or pronoun may become an adverbial modifier in another way without any change in form, and with no connective joining it to the word modified:—

The father dead, the sons managed the business.
His money spent, he must work or beg or starve.
Other help failing, we must rely the more on you.
Hand in hand, they left Eden.
Our hearts however sorrowful, we yet must seem cheerful.
They refusing, we must act.

Idea expressed

The noun or pronoun in these sentences is followed by an appositive adjective word or phrase, the construction expressing condition, concession, cause or reason, time, manner, or some other circumstance accompanying the action or condition which the modified word expresses; and sometimes the construction is nearly equivalent to another independent statement:—

Thus, —

Equivalents

After the father's death
When the father was dead
Because the father was dead
} the sons managed the business.

When his money is spent
If his money is spent
Since his money is spent
} he must work or beg or starve.

Though our hearts are sorrowful, yet we must strive.

As soon as they refuse
If they refuse
On their refusal
} we must act.

The foe and the stranger shall tread o'er his head
(And) *we* (shall be) *far away* on the billow.

The construction is called 'absolute' because it seems 'cut off' from the modified word, there being no connecting word. When pronouns are thus used, they are almost invariably in the nominative case form. Case determined

The nominative absolute construction usually modifies the predicate of a sentence, and regularly stands directly before the subject, or directly after the verb or object. Connection Place

RULE XIII. — *A noun or pronoun, followed by an appositive adjective expression, is used in the nominative case absolute, to express adverbial relations.* Rule

Punctuation. V. The nominative absolute construction is separated from the rest of the sentence by commas.

The absolute construction may consist of a noun or pronoun followed by — May be

A simple adjective, — The man *dead*, we cared for his family.

An adjective with copulative participle, — The man *being dead*, we cared for his family.

Note. — Care must be taken not to mistake the subject and a participial phrase modifying it for the nominative absolute construction: —

The *sun* (subject) rising *dispersed* the fog.
The *sun* (subject) having risen *dispersed* the fog.
The *sun* (nom. abs.) *rising*, the fog was dispersed.
The *sun* (nom. abs.) *having risen*, the fog was dispersed.

In older English an occasional objective absolute is found: —

Alas, *him offending*, whom can we trust?

In Old English the instrumental — Latin ablative — was the absolute case.

Adjective and modifiers, — The prisoner *really sorry for his wrong.*

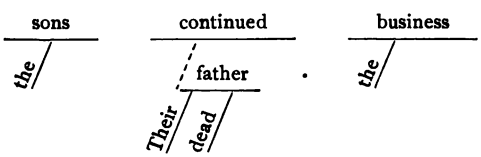
A simple participle, — The man *dying*, or *having died.*

A participle, object, complement, and modifiers, — The brute, *having quickly killed his victim with a bludgeon.* Joseph *having been basely sold into slavery by his brethren.*

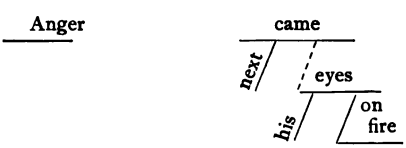
A prepositional phrase, — Hand *in hand*, side *by side.*

An infinitive alone or with modifiers, — One *to fly*, two *to remain.* The winner *to take gate money.* Everything *to be sold.*

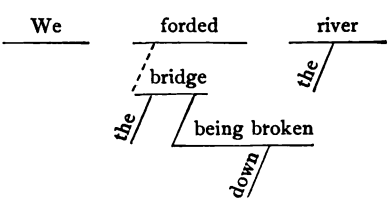
Note. — 1. Their father dead. the sons continued the business.



2. Anger came next, his eyes on fire.



3. We forded the river, the bridge being broken down.



EXERCISES

1. Their tents in order, the soldiers prepared their supper.

2. This done, they all went their several ways.

3. Then came Jesus, the doors being shut, and sat in the midst.

4. The mountains rose height upon height.

5. Bloodshot his eye, his nostrils spread,
The loose rein dangling from his head,
Housing and saddle bloody red,
Lord Marmion's steed rushed by.

6. They grew in beauty side by side,
They filled one home with glee.

7. Rocked in the cradle of the deep,
I lay me down in peace to sleep.

8. She failing in her promise, I have been diverting my chagrin.

9. Six frozen winters spent, you may return from banishment.

10. In came Rip, his dog at his heels.

11. His father dead and his brother absent, the boy was cared for by friends.

12. Shame lost, all is lost. The wicked flee, no man pursuing.

13. The throne vacant, William became king.

14. Fire in each eye, and papers in each hand,
They rave, recite, and madden round the land.

15. The soul, uneasy and confined from home,
Rests and expatiates in a life to come.

(Further examples will be given after participles.)

XI. PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

Preposition and object

Nouns, pronouns, and their equivalents become modifiers through a preposition. They limit or qualify another word in some way which the preposition defines. They are called the object of the preposition; and except in the double possessive construction, they are in the objective case. The preposition with its object forms a prepositional phrase, which is said to be dependent on, or governed by, the modified word.

Prepositions express relations like those expressed by case endings in inflected languages: —

Relations expressed

Of expresses the possessive and similar relations (genitive), —

A friend *of* Mr. Jones.
They *of* Edinburgh.
The House *of* the Seven Gables.

To and *for* express the indirect objective relation (dative), —

Give it *to* me. Do it *for* him.
Adapted *for* this purpose.

From expresses separation or source (ablative), —

From Jerusalem. *From* home.

In, at, by, express place (locative), —

In town. *By* the river. *At* school.

With and *by* express instrument, agency, process (instrumental), —

With my little hatchet. *By* John Jones, secretary.

At, into, etc., direct objective (accusative), —

To laugh *at* (ridicule) one.
To break *into* (enter) a bank.

From their use in the sentence, phrases are: — **Kinds**

Adjective, — modifying nouns or pronouns;
Adverbial, — modifying verbs, adjectives, adverbs, or a clause or sentence;
Substantive, — taking the place of a noun;
Independent, — having neither grammatical nor logical connection with any part of the sentence.

An adjective phrase may often be replaced by: — **Substitutes for adjective phrase**

An adjective, —

An image *of brass* = a *brazen* image.
A soldier *from France* = a *French* soldier.
A stool with *three legs* = a *three-legged* stool.
The wedding of *the king* = the *royal* wedding.

An attributive noun, —

A fence *of rails* = a *rail* fence.
A patch *of potatoes* = a *potato* patch.
A house *in the city* = a *city* house.

A possessive, —

The hoof *of a horse* = a *horse's* hoof.
The friends *of my father* = my *father's* friends.

A clause, —

My friends *from the country* = my friends *who live in the country*.

Uses of An adjective phrase may be used in the various constructions in which simple adjectives are used: —

Attributive or appositive, —

My home *in heaven* (heavenly) is bright and fair.

Predicate nominative, —

He is *in good health* (healthy).

Predicate objective, —

I'll sing him *into good humor* (good-humored).

Appositive with nominative absolute, —

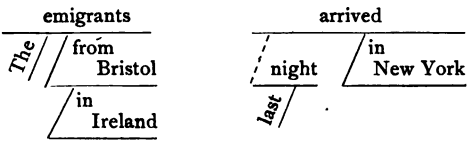
His mind *at ease* (quiet), he returned.

Place of The adjective phrase regularly follows the word modified. The preposition regularly precedes the governed word; but if this word is an *interrogative* or *relative pronoun*, especially the relative *that*, the preposition may come at the end of the clause, as it may also in poetry: —

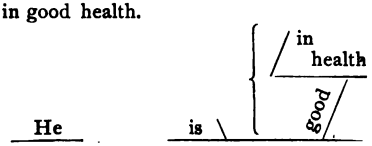
What is this a part *of?*

The apples *that* he brought a peck *of.*

Note. — 1. The emigrants from Bristol in Ireland arrived last night in New York.



2. He is in good health.



The adverb phrase expressing the relation of time, place, manner, degree, direction, and other relations, whether qualifying a verb, a verbal, an adjective, or an adverb, may be replaced by a simple adverb: — **Substitute for adverb phrase**

The house burned *to the ground* = burned *down*.
It stood *in that place* = stood *there*.
The news came *at that time* = came *then*.
It was done *in this way* = done *thus*.
They came *with speed* = came *speedily*.

In like manner, an adverb phrase may be substituted for most adverbs.

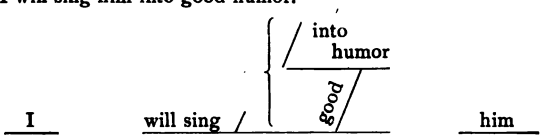
The adverb phrase may either precede or follow its governing word, but must be so placed that there can be no mistake about what it modifies. **Place of**

The chief substantive use of the prepositional phrase is as the object of a preposition: — **Substantive phrase**

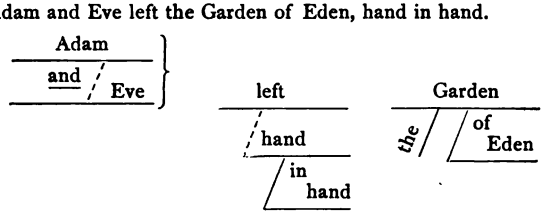
He comes from *behind the house* = from that *place*.
He would not have gone *except for me*.

---

3. I will sing him into good humor.



4. Adam and Eve left the Garden of Eden, hand in hand.



Whether or not the prepositional phrase is used as subject is questionable: —

From here to London is a day's journey.
Between noon and sundown is six hours.
Towards the earth's centre is down.

Here some noun, like *distance, time, direction,* may be understood as subject modified by these phrases.

Independent phrases

Prepositional phrases are, like other expressions, occasionally used in a sentence in such a way as to show neither grammatical nor logical connection with any other part of the sentence. They may then be called independent: —

At any rate, he soon went home.
To the best of my knowledge, he was less than ten years old.

To make the phrase modify any word in the sentence as it stands, changes the meaning of the assertion.

Note. — *For*, introducing an infinitive subject, may be disposed of in two ways. In such an expression as, —

For him to go would be dangerous,

the meaning may be: —

His going would be dangerous — in general; or,
His going would be dangerous — for him.

In the first case the subject is the infinitive with its subject, *him to go;* and *for* is not a true preposition, but an introductory word. In the second case the subject is the infinitive *to go*, alone, and the phrase *for him* modifies the adjective dangerous, —

To go or *going* would be dangerous *for him.*

Yet *him* expresses the subject of the action of the infinitive in either case.

The object of a preposition after an intransitive verb in the active voice, is sometimes made subject of the verb in the passive voice, the preposition remaining as an adverbial modifier: — Object made subject of passive verb

They laughed *at her.*
She was laughed *at.*
They talked *about* him.
He was talked *about.*
They cared *for him* and thought much *of him.*
He was cared *for* and thought much *of.*

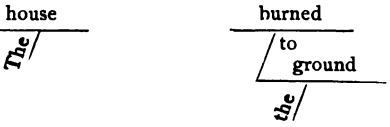
RULE XIV. — *A preposition governs a noun or its equivalent in the objective case, the phrase thus formed performing the office of an adjective, an adverb, or* (*rarely*) *a noun.* Rule

Punctuation. VI. A phrase transferred from the middle or end of a sentence to the beginning, is separated by a comma from what follows.

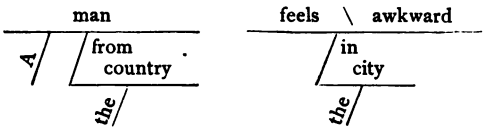
The object of a preposition may be: —

A noun, — From *Boston,* at *ease,* in *debt.*
A pronoun, — Toward *him,* for *each,* by *whom.*
An adjective, — On *high,* in *vain,* for *good.*
An adverb, — Since *then,* till *when,* from *where.*
An infinitive, — About *to go,* save *to work,* except *begging.*
A phrase, — From *under the house,* till *after dinner.*

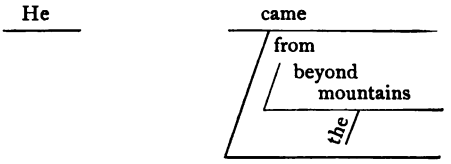
Note. — 1. The house burned to the ground.



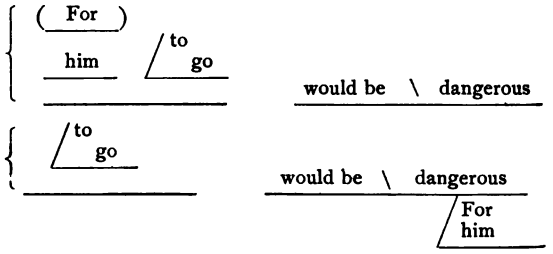
2. A man from the country feels awkward in the city.



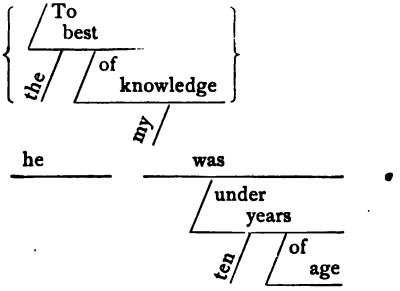
3. He came from beyond the mountains.



4. For him to go would be dangerous.



5. To the best of my knowledge, he was under ten years of age.



EXERCISES

1. The love of money is the root of all evil.

2. A house on fire, with no water at hand, may well inspire with terror.

3. These are fancies of a mind at war with itself.

4. In the spring a young man's fancy lightly turns to thoughts of love.

5. At all events, the great man of the prophecy had not yet appeared.

6. They listened with a horror at the heart.

7. He was taller by almost the breadth of my nail.

8. The people were then against us; they are now for us.

9. With useless endeavor Sisyphus is rolling his stone up the mountain.

10. The prayer of Ajax was for light.

11. They were sitting on the stile, side by side, laughing at danger.

12. We drifted from snow-clad mountains to burning plains.

13. He expressed a favorable opinion upon our prospect of success.

14. For many weeks, I had walked with this poor friendless girl.

15. We take no note of time, but from its loss.

16. I've travelled much this weary world around.

17. In the Acadian land, on the shores of the Basin of Minas,
Distant, secluded, still, the little village of Grand Pré
Lay in the fruitful valley.

18. There the wicked cease from troubling,
And the weary are at rest.

19. The time 'twixt six and now
Must by us both be spent most preciously.

20. The priest was good enough for us, in spite of the old gentleman's saying.

21. Goodness, growing to a pleurisy, dies in his own too much.

22. We'll wait upon your grace till after supper.

23. As for me and my house, we will serve the Lord.

24. They danced themselves to weariness, and talked their friends to death.

25. We of America have little patience with such ideas:
They are too far removed from the practical for us.

26. What are you waiting for? Whom are you staring at? Here are the men that we passed by.

27. They, with the gold to give, doled him out silver.

28. From marge to blue marge, the whole sky grew his targe.

29. A home at war is not a sight for youth to look upon.

30. This soul of ours strives weakly in the child, is loosed in manhood, clogged by sickness, back compelled by age and waste, set free at last by death.

31. From edge to edge of earth's round, strength and beauty everywhere germinate.

32. The sun looked over the mountain's rim, and straight was a path of gold for him.

33. Temptations come but for man to meet and master, and make crouch beneath his foot.

XII. INFINITIVES

Double character

The infinitive is a verbal noun. It is used in most of the constructions of the ordinary noun, and takes the usual adjective modifiers. At the same time it retains its verb nature; and, as a verb, it may take the appropriate accompaniments of the verb, — object, predicate noun or adjective, and adverbial modifiers. On account of its double character, the infinitive requires special discussion.

Number and kinds

Every complete verb has two simple infinitives. One is the simplest form of the verb, and is often accompanied by *to*, —

(*to*) *love*	(*to*) *be*	(*to*) *have*	(*to*) *know*
(*to*) *give*	(*to*) *do*	(*to*) *see*	

the other ends in *ing*, and, having the same form as the present participle, is called the participial infinitive, —

loving giving being doing having seeing knowing

Compound infinitives

By the use of the auxiliaries *be* and *have* and the simple participles, the voice, tense, and form of conjugation of infinitives may be expressed, corresponding to the properties of finite verbs. Thus are formed, as seen in the following scheme, the infinitive phrases, or compound infinitives. They have all the uses of simple infinitives.

Note. — The tenses of the infinitive and the participle are not absolute, but relative to the time of the action expressed by the principal verb or

		Active		*Passive*
		SIMPLE	PROGRESSIVE	SIMPLE
Root	*Pres.*	(to) give	(to) be giving	(to) be given
	Perf.	(to) have given	(to) have been giving	(to) have been given
Part	*Pres.*	giving	(being giving)	being given (prog.)
	Perf.	having given	having been giving	having been given

Infinitive phrase The infinitive, along with its subject, complement, object, and modifiers, may be called an infinitive phrase.

Sign *to* The root infinitive is usually preceded by the word *to*, now called its sign and thought of as a part of the infinitive, but used in Old English as a true preposition: —

Good *to* drink = good *for* drinking = *for* a beverage.
Seen *to* work = seen *at* working = *at* labor.

Omitted Root infinitives are used without the sign *to*: —

After the auxiliaries, *can*, *do*, *may*, *must*, *shall*, *will*, —

I can *love*	I must *love*
I did *love*	I should *love*
I may *love*	I would *love*

---

other word, the present expressing the same or a subsequent time, the perfect expressing a previous time: —

He *will want* to go.	He *will be* glad to go or to have gone.
He *wants* to go.	He *is* glad to go or to have gone.
He *wanted* to go.	He *was* glad to go or to have gone.

Words signifying expectation, intention, hope, plan, and the like, should be followed by the present infinitive only: —

I expect *to go* to France.
I expected *to go* to Holland.
I had no intention *of going* abroad.
I had lost all hope *of recovering* my jewels.

Optionally after *come* (imp.), *dare*, *'gin*, *go*, *help*, *need*, *please*, —

Come *buy* of me, come *buy*.
I dare and do *defy* thee for a villain.
Now Phœbus 'gins *arise*.
I'll go *buy* them vizards.
Help me *put* his armor on.
Thy casement I need not *open*.
Please but your honor *hear* me.

In elliptical expressions: —

After *had* followed by *as lief*, *better*, or *rather*, —

I had as lief *drink* gall.
He had rather *go* than *stay*.
We had better *look* to our honors.

After *as well* in comparative expressions, —

As well *give* up now as later.

After *but* following a negative, —

Yon same cloud cannot choose but *fall* by pailfuls.
He doth nothing but *talk* of his horses.

After many transitive verbs the objects of which are the subjects of the infinitive: —

behold	*have*	*know*	*mark*	*see*
bid	*hear*	*let*	*notice*	*watch*
feel	*help*	*make*	*observe*	

Ye have beheld me *give* away myself.
He bade me *knock* him, and *rap* him soundly.
I feel the tears of blood *arise*.
We had our friends and neighbors *visit* us.
I have known one *sit* and *sing*.

With passive verbs

When these verbs are in the passive voice, the infinitive takes *to:* —

One has been known *to sit* and *sing.*

After subject nominative in exclamations: —

He *find* pleasure in doing good!
She *pay* cash when she can get credit!

Uses common to both

The root infinitive and the participial infinitive, either alone or with all accompaniments and modifiers, have some uses in common, with practically the same meaning: —

As subject of a verb, —

To be contents his natural desire.
Being contents his natural desire.

As predicate nominative, —

To see is *to believe.* Seeing is *believing.*

As object of a verb, —

We began *to move* yesterday.
We began *moving* yesterday.

Different meaning

Many verbs, however, take only one kind of infinitive, as object, and others take both, but with a different meaning: —

We used *to play* ball.
We opposed *playing* ball on Sunday.

He likes *to sing.* They need *to beat* the carpet.
He likes *singing.* The carpet needs *beating.*

As object of the prepositions, *about*, *but*, *except*, *save*, and in older English *for*, —

He was about *to go*. He does nothing but *talk*.
He was about *going*. He does little but *talking*.
Men will do anything for religion except (*to*) *live* for it.
Men will do anything for religion except *living* for it.
All studies I defy, save how *to gall* and *pinch* this Bolingbroke.
There's no escape save *swimming*.
What went ye out for *to see?*

Uses of participial infinitive

The participial infinitive is used after many other prepositions: —

He was weary *of living* alone.
They disappeared *after having been seen* for a moment.
There was evidence *against* his *having been drinking*.

The participial infinitive has only these constructions. In any of them it may be limited by a noun or pronoun representing the person or thing chiefly concerned in the action or being expressed by the infinitive, usually as subject, rarely as object of the action: —

As subject, —

Subjective

His killing the deer was an accident =
That *he* killed the deer was an accident.
They approved of *his serving* =
They approved the plan that *he* should serve.
My brother knew about *my fighting* =
My brother knew that *I* fought.

Note. — The infinitives joined to the auxiliaries to form tense phrases and mood phrases are really objects of these auxiliaries: —

I shall *love* = I owe the act of loving.
He will *go* = He chooses the act of going.

Objective

As object, —

I slew this knight in *my defending* = in defending *myself.*
The deep damnation of *his taking* off = of taking *him* off.

Active for passive

Both infinitives have often in the active form a passive meaning: —

My spurs are yet *to win* = *to be won.*
There was something *to pay* = *to be paid.*
I have meat *to eat* = *to be eaten.*
Such a fellow deserves *killing* = *to be killed.*
This soil lacks *tilling* = *being tilled.*

Complement part of substantive

The complement following a copulative infinitive is really a part of the substantive expression, and not, as might be thought, a modifier of the possessive accompanying the infinitive: —

His *being ill* = his *illness.*
Their *being Englishmen* = their English *nationality* or *citizenship.*
Her *having been condemned* = her *condemnation.*

The same is true when no possessive limits the infinitive: —

He thinks of *being a farmer* = he thinks of an *occupation.*
The idea of *having become deaf* = the idea of *deafness.*
The charge of *appearing cowardly* = the charge of apparent *cowardice.*

Participial infinitive and abstract noun

It is sometimes difficult to draw a line between the participial infinitive and the abstract noun. In the expression, —

his quietly *telling* the story,

telling is plainly an infinitive, having an adverbial modifier and a direct object. If we change to, —

his *telling* of the story,

the verb nature has so far disappeared that we may substitute the abstract noun *recital*, with no change of meaning, —

his *recital* of the story.

Noun and verb

The verb nature and the noun nature are thus respectively made prominent by the use of adjective or adverbial modifiers: —

His *fast* and *careless* riding *of the horse* wore out the animal.

His riding the *horse* so *fast* and so *carelessly* wore out the animal.

With article

Preceded by *the*, the infinitive does not take a direct object, but a phrase introduced by *of*: —

Cæsar's passing *the Rubicon*,
or, Cæsar's passing *of the Rubicon*;
but, *the* passing *of the Rubicon*.

Special use of root infinitive

The root infinitive with its sign *to*, retaining more than elsewhere its prepositional value, is added to verbs, nouns, adjectives, and adverbs to express purpose, result, fitness, object, degree, reason, condition, and the like: —

I *come to see* you.
He *returned to find* his house in ruins.
He *failed*, never *to resume* business.
They *prepared* themselves *to do* their duty.
Men *strive to attain* wisdom.

I have *business to transact*, and *inclination to transact* it.
They were *sorry to learn* of our misfortune.
Reading novels *tends to weaken* the memory.
Eve was not *content to look* upon an apple as an apple.
This is not *easy to understand.*
He worked *sufficiently* hard *to weary* himself.
We are *too* old *to learn.*
They are not old *enough to be* senators.
To hear him groan, you would *think* him dying.

Equivalent to

In these cases the infinitive expression is equal to a prepositional phrase introduced by *to*, equivalent to *toward*, *for*, *unto*, *of*, and the like, governing the participial infinitive or an abstract noun: —

I came *to* see you = I came *for* seeing you.
Men strive *to* attain = men strive *toward* attaining or attainment.
Not content *to* look on = not content *with* looking on.
Easy *to* understand = easy *of* understanding or of comprehension.
Glad *to* see you = glad *at* seeing you.

Value of preposition

This function of the preposition becomes still more apparent when for the infinitive we substitute a prepositional phrase having as object an abstract noun: —

A house *to sell* = a house *for sale*, or *on sale.*
Reason *to believe* = reason *for* an *opinion.*
We grieve *to hear* = we grieve *at* the *news.*
An invitation *to unite* = an invitation *to union.*

How disposed of

As adjective modifiers, such infinitives are most like prepositional phrases used as appositive adjectives or nouns; as adverb modifiers, they are like prepositional phrases, or like the adverbial objectives.

Logical or real subject

The root infinitive with *to* is used as the real or logical subject in apposition with a preceding *it* used as provisional or grammatical subject: —

It is a good thing *to have* a trade.
It would please you *to hear* him speak.

Periphrastic future

The root infinitive is used alone in predication with *be* to form a sort of periphrastic (*i.e.* round-about) future tense with the notion of obligation or necessity: —

He is *to be executed* at high noon.
They were *to be* ready.

After *about*, to express a simpler future, —

They were *about to depart.*
We are *about to sell* our house.

After the present and past progressive of *go*, to express periphrastic future, —

You are going *to enlist.*
They were going *to have* a party.

Note. — In such expressions as, —

It is sure *to rain*,
It is likely *to help* you,
He is likely *to come*,

where the singular subject of the verb is subject of the action expressed by the infinitive, there is no difficulty in making the grammar and the logic coincide: —

It to rain = that it will rain, — is sure.
It to help you = that it will help you, — is likely.
He to come = that he will come, — is likely.

As object of verb

The root infinitive, along with its subject and modifiers, is used as the direct object of many transitive verbs: —

Your father bids *you come home.*
The colonel ordered the *sergeant to follow him.*
Mrs. Jones is teaching her *girls to work in the kitchen.*
The officers let the *prisoners escape to their friends.*
They condemned *him to hang at daylight next morning.*
They told the *man to eat the food set before him.*
England expects *every man to do his duty.*

Complement of *to be*

The copulative infinitives, *to be*, etc., used in this construction, take a complement in the objective case to agree with the case of the subject: —

We believed *it* to be *him.*
We saw *them* become *monsters.*

Note. — But when such subjects are plural, a difficulty arises: —

The *Cretans* are believed *to be* liars, and
The *Cretans* are sure *to lie,*

cannot be changed in the same manner as the sentences above.

The Cretans to be liars forms a singular subject, being an infinitive with subject and complement, and requires a singular verb. So we cannot say, The *Cretans to lie, are* sure = That the Cretans lie, *are* sure. Any other tense would present additional difficulties. In such cases the infinitive phrase may be accurately enough disposed of as a modifier of the verb or of the predicate adjective: —

The Cretans are believed to be = charged with being — liars.
The Cretans are sure = inclined — to lie = toward lying.

When the verb is changed to the passive voice, the infinitive remains as an adverbial modifier: — **With passive verb**

You are bidden *to come home.*
The sergeant was ordered *to follow the colonel.*
The girls are taught *to work in the kitchen.*

Note. — There are many starting points for this construction: —

Direct and indirect object, —

I told *him to move* on = I told *him* the *order.*

Object and factitive predicate, —

I made *him beg* = I made *him a beggar.*

Object and adverb phrase, —

They influenced *us to remain* = They influenced *us toward remaining.*

In all cases the noun or pronoun after the verb represents the person or thing as performing the action expressed by the infinitive, or as most concerned in it; hence it may be called subject of the infinitive; and the whole construction may be considered the object in the sentence.

A few elliptical expressions seem difficult; but the difficulty disappears when the ellipses are supplied: —

It was so placed *as to obstruct* the way = as [it would be placed] *to obstruct* the way.

He was such a fool *as to come* = as [one would be] *to come.*

He knows not what *to do* = what [he is] *to do.*

We have *to do* so = we have [a duty] *to do* so.

I had rather *go* than *stay* = I had (= should have = should consider) *to go* (= *going*) rather (= better), than [I should consider] *stay* (= staying).

To tell the truth, I don't believe it = [if I were compelled] *to tell* the truth, [I should say] I don't believe it.

Summary Both infinitives are used with or without complements or objects and modifiers, as: —

Subject, — *To eat* — *eating* — is necessary.
To pull beets — *pulling* beets — is hard work.

Predicate, — He is *to come.*
They seem *to make* trouble.
His work is *farming.*

Direct object, — I want *to come.*
I want him *to come.*
I like *skating.*

Object of preposition, — They are about *to go.*
They are about *going.*

Appositive, — It is pleasant *to live.*
His fault, *drinking,* is chronic.

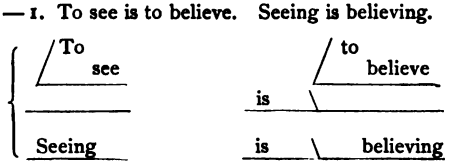
The root infinitive has other uses: —

After auxiliaries, — I do *love.*
I shall *love.*
I ought *to love.*

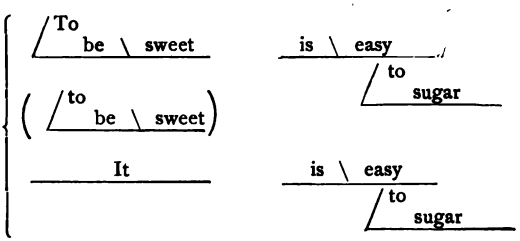
Adjective modifier, — Food *to eat.*
A way *to make.*

Adverb modifier, — He comes *to stay.*
Ready *to work.*
Too lazy *to live.*

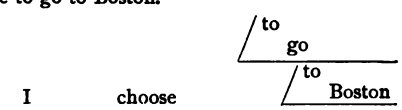
Note. — 1. To see is to believe. Seeing is believing.



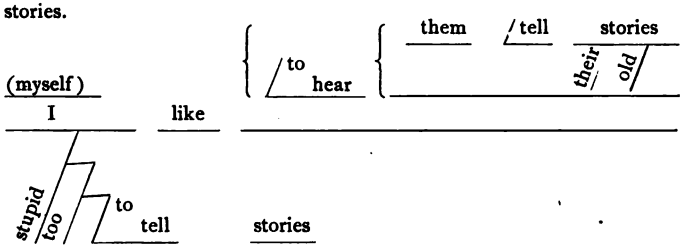
2. To be sweet is easy to sugar. It is easy to sugar to be sweet.



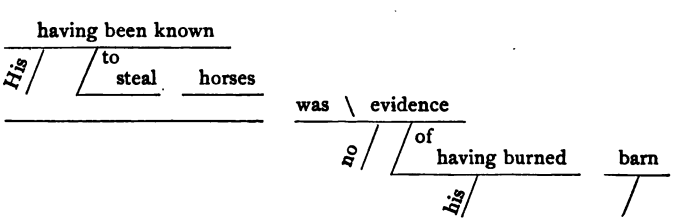
3. I choose to go to Boston.



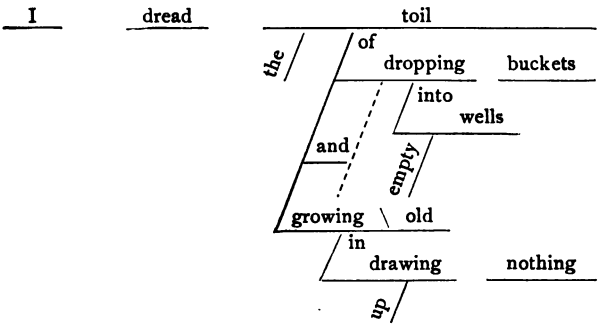
4. I myself, too stupid to tell stories, like to hear them tell their old stories.



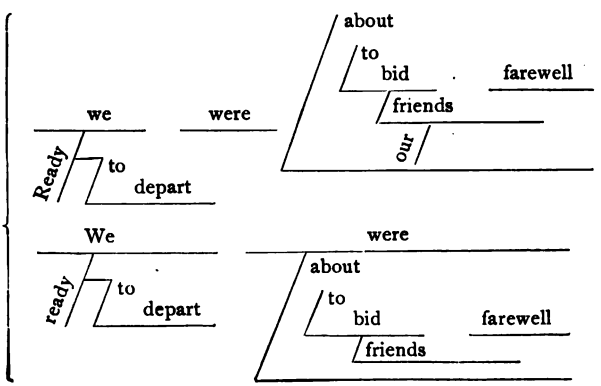
5. His having been known to steal horses was no evidence of his having burned a barn.



6. I dread the toil of dropping buckets into empty wells, and growing old in drawing nothing up.



7. Ready to depart, we were about to bid our friends farewell.



EXERCISES

1. Come live with me and be my love.

2. I shall try to keep the balance true.

3. To be hurried away by every event is to have no political system.

4. It costs nothing for a wise soul to communicate its wisdom.

5. She aimed to preserve her throne, to maintain peace, and to restore civil order.

6. We received an invitation to accompany our friend home.

7. It is excellent to have a giant's strength; it is tyrannous to use it like a giant.

8. They call drinking deep dyeing scarlet.

9. My motive in going was to be of use.

10. I never knew a man worth the saving to be drowned.

11. I leave my friend to learn unpleasant truths from his enemies.

12. Mortals too exalted to labor cease to be men.

13. Seeming is not being; nor does living consist in dreaming.

14. A bad ending follows a bad beginning. I must learn how to begin.

15. The doing of right alone teaches the value or the meaning of right.

16. Theirs not to make reply
Theirs not to reason why,
Theirs but to do and die.

17. None knew thee but to love thee;
None named thee but to praise.

18. I was about to leave this wretched creature to starve.

19. Esther Dudley appeared to have grown partially crazed.

20. It is our nature to desire a monument of slate or marble or a pillar of granite.

21. Hearing him threaten to tear the house down, she insisted on his letting the kitchen remain till the last.

22. Peter's father had faith enough in the story to cause the cellar to be dug over.

23. Peter himself chose to consider the legend as an indisputable truth.

24. The feet past all darning, — to make a long story short, — she was trying to cut pieces out of an old petticoat to make new soles.

25. She never came into daylight except to follow funerals.

26. Being in a boat is being in prison with little chance of being released.

27. To be or not to be, that is the question.
To die, to sleep, and by a sleep to say we end
The heartache and a thousand natural shocks,
. . . 'tis a consummation
Devoutly to be wished.

28. To die, — to sleep, →
To sleep, perchance to dream, — ay, there's the rub.

XIII. PARTICIPLES

Participles are verbal forms used as adjectives; but participles of copulative verbs and active participles of transitive verbs so far retain their verb nature that, used predicatively or appositively, they take complements and objects. Every complete verb has two simple participles called for convenience present and past: — **Double nature**

loving	*passing*	*giving*	*drinking*	*bringing*
loved	*past*	*given*	*drunk*	*brought*

The past participle is combined with the participles of *have* and *be* so as to form participial phrases, or compound participles, having voice and tense like finite verbs, and used in constructions like those of the simple participles. **Compound participles**

Active

	SIMPLE	PROGRESSIVE
Pres.	loving	(being loving)
Perf.	having loved	having been loving
Past	loved (combined with *have*)	

Passive

	SIMPLE	PROGRESSIVE
Pres.		being loved
Perf.	having been loved	
Past	loved (except with *have*)	

A participle with its complement or object and modifiers may be called a participial phrase: — **Participial phrase**

Finding myself deprived of company, I went home.
Not being well satisfied with themselves, they were gloomy.

Note. — The tenses of the participle, like those of the infinitive, are not absolute, but only relative to the time expressed by the auxiliary with

Uses. The simple participles are used like adjectives:—

Attributively,—

A *blushing* maiden. A swiftly *running* brook.
A *delighted* guest. A much *loved* friend.

Predicatively,—

The dog is *beaten*. The dog is *running*.

(Passive voice and progressive conjugation)

I am *fatigued*. The ring is *broken*.

(Pure adjectives)

Adverbial predicate,—

Here he comes *panting*. It stands firmly *planted*.

Objective predicate,—

He makes himself *felt*. He keeps us *standing*.

Both simple and compound participles, alone or with all modifiers, are used as appositive adjectives:—

Their leader, *living*, inspired them.
Toiling, rejoicing, sorrowing, onward through life he goes.
A house *divided* against itself, cannot stand.
Thy love was wonderful, *passing* the love of women.
Do you hear the children *weeping*, O my brothers?

---

which they are used, or the verb of the sentence in which they are found; or, like other adjectives, they are timeless:—

I *am going, was going, shall be going.*
The soldier *is killed, was killed, will be killed.*
A *jumping* frog. A *dead* Indian.

Having seen the enemy flee, we were satisfied.

He became a private citizen, *having been retired* from the army.

Copulative participles

The participles *being* and *having been* are often merely connectives between an appositive adjective or noun or a descriptive participle and the word modified: —

'Their father *dead* — their father *being dead*, — the sons separated.

The captain *wounded* — the captain *having been wounded*, — withdrew.

Grammatically adjectives, logically adverbs

Appositive participial expressions, while construed grammatically as adjectives going along with the subject of a verb, are often logically adverbial modifiers, indicating some circumstance attending the action expressed by the verb: —

She *dying* gave it to me,

Note. — A participle of the new conjugation used as an attributive adjective often has the ending *ed* fully pronounced, although in its verbal use this suffix does not make an additional syllable: —

An *agéd* man, a *blessed* sight, a *crookéd* stick; but,

You have *aged* greatly. He has *blessed* them.

He had *crooked* his finger at us.

Some participles of the old conjugation retain the termination *en* when used as adjectives, dropping it when used as verbs: —

A drunk*en* man, a sunk*en* ship, a strick*en* deer; but,

He had *drunk* heavily. The ship was *sunk*. He had *struck* a rock.

Some new verbs take an old participle as adjective, retaining the new participle in verbal use: —

A *swollen* face, a *rotten* stick; but,

The river had *swelled* enormously. The post had *rotted* away.

is equivalent to,

When she died she gave it to me.

Here the participle, like the dependent clause, expresses the time of action.

The horses *running* away, demolished the coach,

is equivalent to,

By running away, the horses demolished the coach;

and the participle, like the equivalent phrase, expresses the means or instrument.

Losing our position, we must do something else,

is equivalent to,

If we lose our position, we must do something else;

and the participle, like the equivalent clause, expresses the condition of the action.

Endowed with wonderful beauty, she was nevertheless repulsive,

is equivalent to,

Though she was endowed with wonderful beauty, she was nevertheless repulsive.

Here the participle, like the subordinate clause, expresses concession.

Participle and infinitive with the object

Participles modifying an object appositively often express the same meaning, or nearly the same, as an infinitive and subject accusative after the same verb: —

I heard *him saying* something = *him say* something.
We saw *him dismounting* = *him* dismount.

These constructions differ in meaning from the participial infinitive with a modifying possessive (where the three are interchangeable) only by emphasizing the actor, while the participial infinitive construction emphasizes the action: — Difference

We noticed *him turning* pale (or *turn* pale),

is about equal to,

We noticed *him*, and he was turning pale, or as he was turning pale;

while,

We noticed his *turning* pale,

is about the same as,

We noticed his *growing paleness*.

In many cases, however, the constructions are not interchangeable without an entire change of meaning; and where they are nearly equivalent, the participial construction is liable to ambiguity: — Constructions not interchangeable

I saw *him struck* down,

may mean, —

I saw him *when he was* struck down, or
I saw him *after he was* struck down.

The appositive adjective expression following a noun or pronoun in the nominative absolute construction, is With nominative absolute

more often either a participle or a participial phrase than anything else: —

The rest must perish, their great leader *slain*.
He left my side, a smile *parting his innocent lips*.
Peace *being declared*, the conference broke up.
The signal *having been given*, the race began.
The colonel *having been appointed general*, the major became colonel.

Copulative participles

Even when an adjective or its equivalent would serve the purpose alone, the participles of *be* are frequently inserted in the nominative absolute construction as copulative words, as in the ordinary appositive modifier: —

The mother *ill* — *being ill*, — the daughter took her place.
We *absent* — *being absent*, — nothing can be done.
Their hearts (*being*) *full of care*, they began their labor.

Disconnected participles

The noun or pronoun in the nominative absolute construction or the subject of a suppressed clause, is sometimes omitted, leaving the participial phrase apparently unconnected with the rest of the sentence: —

(We, or you) *supposing* it to be true, what are you going to do about it?
(One) *speaking* generally (would say) it is correct.

Participle as preposition

Out of this construction grows the use of the participle as a preposition: —

He is large, (one) *considering* his age = for his age.
Provided this is true = that this is true being provided.

A simple participle may be converted into a descriptive adjective, and this, like any adjective, be converted into a noun: — **Converted to noun**

The *living* must bury the dead.
We shall be among the *forgotten*.
They relieved the *suffering*, comforted the *mourning*, and consoled the *dying*.

Like the active infinitive, the simple active participle is sometimes used with a passive meaning: — **Active for passive**

Forty years was this temple *building* = being built.
The dinner is now *cooking* = being cooked.
Some mischief is surely *brewing* = being brewed.

The participle should not be left swinging loose in a sentence: — **Connected**

(To one) standing on the brow of the hill, the valley presents a charming picture.

Participles may be used as adjectives: — **Summary**

Attributively, — A *dazzling* light.
Predicatively with nominative, — The light is *dazzling*.
With objective, — The snow made the light *dazzling*.
Appositively, — The light, *dazzling* in the extreme, pained our eyes.

Note. —

1. (*a*) She is singing.

She	is singing	(*verb*)

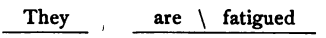
(*b*) They are invited.

They	are invited	(*verb*)

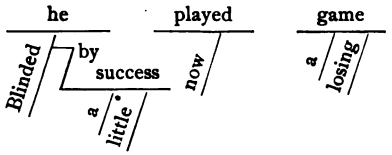
(*c*) She is charming.

She	is \ charming	(*adjective*)

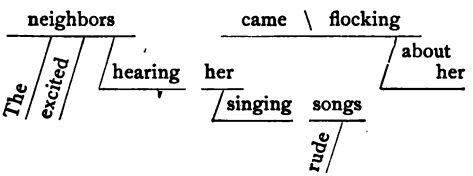
(*d*) They are fatigued.



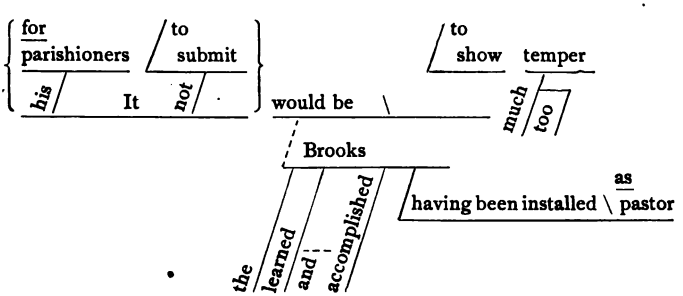
2. Blinded by a little success, he now played a losing game.



3. The excited neighbors, hearing her singing rude songs, came flocking about her.



4. It would be to show too much temper for his parishioners not to submit, the learned and accomplished Brooks having been installed as pastor.



EXERCISES

1. Talents angel-bright, wanting worth, are shining instruments of evil.

2. All God's angels come to us disguised.

3. The helmed cherubim and sworded seraphim
Are seen in glittering ranks, with camp outspread.

4. There sits our sulky sullen dame,
Gathering her brows like gathering storm,
Nursing her wrath to keep it warm.

5. A man deep-wounded may feel too much pain to feel much anger.

6. A high-strung man, being once chafed, cannot easily be reined again to temperance.

7. I call the living, I mourn the dying, I break the lightning.

8. The dove returning bore the sacred mark
Of earth restored, to the long-laboring ark.

9. A falcon towering in her pride of place
Was by a mousing owl hawked at and killed.

10. Ayr gurgling kissed his pebbled shore,
O'erhung with wildwood thickening green.

11. Thither being going, almost spent with hunger, I am fallen into this offence.

12. No man lives without jostling and being jostled:
He must elbow his way through the world, giving and receiving offence.

13. The company were about to leave a good fire, being then paying their reckoning.

14. Now the bright morning star, day's harbinger.
Comes dancing from the east.

15. This done, they walked about the room a short time, their faces all the while betraying considerable anxiety.

16. He hath compassion for the erring. He giveth his beloved sleep.

17. Her back being toward him, he shook his crippled fingers at her.

18. Summing up the mischief wrought during ten years, it far exceeds the profit.

19. The disease increasing, he never went into the sunshine save with a staff in his right hand, his left resting on his wife's shoulder, and bearing heavily downward.

20. Death seemed to draw near the door, often to lift the latch, sometimes to thrust his ugly skull within, nodding to Rose, and pointing to her husband.

21. I have known him laughed at, imposed upon, talked to shamefully, yet always sweet tempered.

22. I am just going to leap into the dark. I am going the way of all the earth.

23. My heart is wax easily to be moulded, but enduring as marble to retain.

24. I have not seen the righteous man forsaken, nor his seed begging bread. I have seen the wicked spreading himself like a green bay tree.

25. Bounded by the St. John's and Sabine, or however otherwise bounded and described, it is our country, to be cherished in all our hearts, to be defended by all our hands.

XIV. INDEPENDENT ELEMENTS

A few expressions have a use wholly independent of the sentence; they do not enter into its structure as either essential, modifying, or connecting elements: — Elements not connected

Words representing the person or thing addressed, —

Venerable men, you have come down to us from a former generation.
Ye crags and peaks, I'm with you once again.
But now your brow is bald, *John*.

Exclamatory expressions, — Kinds

Merciful Heaven! *What, Man!* Ne'er pull your hat upon your brows.
Pluto and *Hell!* All hurt behind!
Ha, ha, ha! So you're paid.
I love him! *He* to see my father!

Pleonastic expressions, —

Thy *rod* and thy *staff*, they comfort me.
The *boy*, O where was he?
But the *fireflies*, — all honor to the fireflies.

Headings and titles, —

The Origin of Species. *Chapter I.* *General Statement.*

Single words, —

Aye, aye, sir.
Yes; I am going to Boston.
Well, we are here at last.

Abbreviations

Infinitives, prepositional phrases, and participial phrases, sometimes called independent elements, may usually be brought into connection with some word, or with the whole sentence, as modifiers, by supplying what is evidently omitted: —

(If I am) *to tell the truth*, (I must say) I don't know.

(To any one) *taking everything into account*, it seems a bad business.

(I will say) *in a word*, you are wrong.

Introductory adverbs

Adverbs introducing a sentence, and by some called independent words, *really*, *undoubtedly*, *perhaps*, and the like, and some phrases sometimes called independent, are really adverbial in nature, modifying either the predicate or the whole sentence: —

At all events = certainly, — we shall go.

To the best of my remembrance = if I remember correctly, — there were only three.

Rules

RULE XV. — *A noun or pronoun used as a word of address is in the nominative case independent.*

Punctuation. VII. Words of address are set off from the rest of the sentence by commas.

RULE XVI. — *Nouns and pronouns used as exclamations are in the nominative case independent.*

Punctuation. VIII. Exclamatory expressions are followed by an exclamation point.

Note. — In older English an occasional objective pronoun is found in an exclamatory expression: —

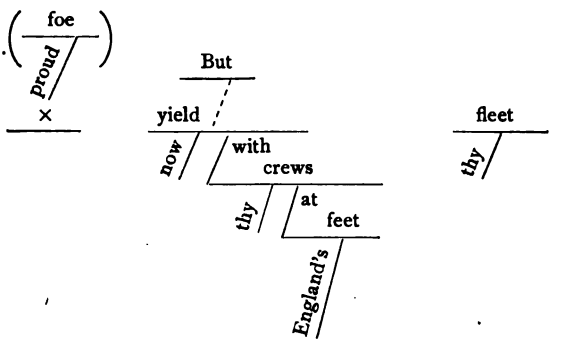
Me miserable! Which way shall I fly?

RULE XVII. — *A noun may be used in the nominative case independent by pleonasm or by specification.*

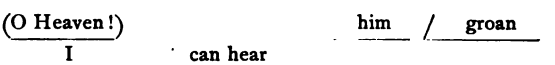
Punctuation. IX. Headings and titles are usually printed in capitals and followed by a period. Headings placed on the line with the subject matter are followed by a period and dash.

Note. —

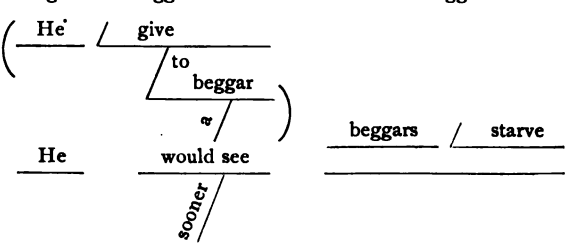
1. But, proud foe, now yield thy fleet, with thy crews at England's feet.



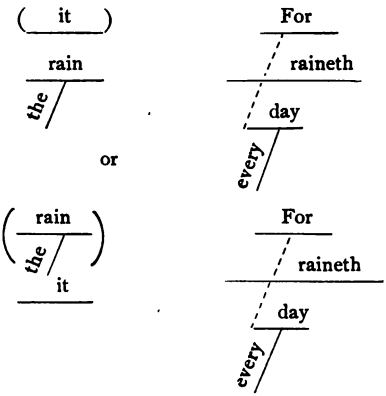
2. O Heaven! I can hear him groan.



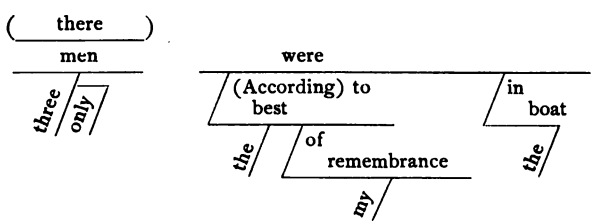
3. He give to a beggar! He would sooner see beggars starve.



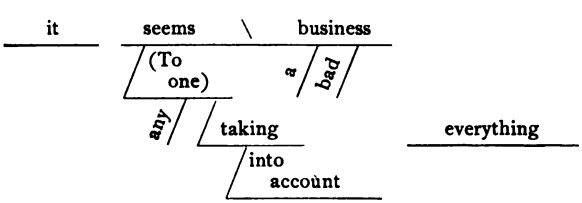
4. For the rain it raineth every day.



5. (According) to the best of my remembrance, there were only three men in the boat.



6. (To any one) taking everything into account, it seems a bad business.



EXERCISES

1. News! News from heaven! Marcus, the post is come.

2. My leg is cut in two. Light, gentlemen!

3. O you powers, heaven gives men countless eyes to view your acts.

4. Halt! The dust-brown ranks stood fast.
Fire! Out blazed the rifle blast.

5. Up! Clouted knee and ragged coat,
A man is a man to-day.

6. Ah, brother! Only I and thou
Are left of all that circle now.

7. "Fie, silly bird!" I answered.

8. O brave men and fair women,
Ill comes of hate and seeming.

9. Good-by, proud world! I'm going home.

10. O thou child of many prayers!
Life hath quicksands, — life hath snares.

11. Yes, child of suffering, thou mayest well be glad.

12. Tears, idle tears, I know not what they mean.

13. The heroes of the Revolution, — we will honor their memory.

14. The foe, they come! they come!

15. O night,
And storm, and darkness, ye are wondrous strong,
Yet lovely in your strength.

16. Oh! The gallant fisher's life,
It is the best of any.

XV. SUMMARY OF ELEMENTS AND THEIR USES IN THE SIMPLE DECLARATIVE SENTENCE

Sentence The simple sentence consists of a subject and predicate.

Subject The subject may be: —

Simple, — consisting of a single word or expression.

Compound, — consisting of two or more coördinate words or expressions taken together.

Bare The bare or grammatical subject is the subject without its modifiers.

Apparent The apparent or provisional subject — impersonal *it* or the adverb *there* — takes the place before the verb of the real subject sometimes not expressed, sometimes following the verb.

Logical The logical subject is the subject with all its modifiers.

The bare subject may be: —

A noun, a pronoun, any expression merely named, a converted adjective, a converted adverb, an infinitive or infinitive phrase, a prepositional phrase — or two or more of these taken together.

Modifiers The bare subject, noun or pronoun, may be modified in many ways: —

By adjectives, — Attributive, appositive, (predicative).

By nouns, — Attributive (converted), appositive, (predicative), possessive.

By pronouns, — (predicative), appositive, possessive.

Note. — As the predicate adjective and noun, though modifiers of the subject, form a part of the predicate, they are not formally classed here.

By adverbs, — (converted).
By prepositional phrases.
By participles or participial phrases.
By infinitives or infinitive phrases.

The predicate may be: — **Predicate**

Simple, — a single verb, alone or with modifiers. **Simple**
Compound, — two or more verbs, alone or with modifiers. **Compound**

The meaning of the verb may be completed by: — **Complements**

A predicate noun, pronoun, or adjective, or equivalents modifying, — Subject, subject and verb, object. **Predicate word**
A noun or pronoun or its equivalent, — As direct object, as indirect object. **Object**

The verb may be modified in several ways: — **Modifiers**

By one or more adverbs,
Adjectives (converted),
Prepositions (converted),
Nouns in the objective case adverbial,
Prepositional phrases,
Infinitives or infinitive phrases,
Adverbial predicate adjectives or participles,
Nominative absolute constructions,
Participles or participial phrases formally connected with the subject, but logically going along with the verb.

In addition to these, a verb in the passive voice may have as modifiers: — **With passive**

A retained direct object,
A retained indirect object,
A retained preposition.

Of predicate adjective

A predicate adjective may take as modifiers: —

Adverbs,
Nouns in the objective case adverbial,
Prepositional phrases,
Infinitives and infinitive phrases.

Of predicate noun

A predicate noun or pronoun may have all the modifiers of a subject noun or pronoun (except predicate modifiers).

Of object

An object noun or pronoun may have all the modifiers of a subject noun or pronoun.

Of any substantive

A noun or pronoun in any construction may have all the modifiers of the subject (except predicate modifiers).

Of attributive adjective

An attributive adjective may be modified by adverbs; and an appositive adjective may be modified by all the modifiers of the predicate adjective.

Of adverb

An adverb may be modified by adverbial elements: —

Adverbs,
Nouns in the objective case adverbial,
Prepositional phrases,
Infinitives or infinitive phrases.

Of infinitive

Infinitives in their noun nature may have the modifiers of ordinary nouns; and in their verb nature may have the complements and adverbial modifiers of the verbs of which they are a part.

Of participle

Participles take the complements and modifiers of the verbs to which they belong.

Conjunction

Two or more coördinate elements may be connected by conjunctions.

Preposition

A modifying noun or pronoun, or equivalent, may be connected with the modified word by a preposition.

Accompanying a simple sentence, there may be independent elements: — **Independent elements**

Expressions of address,
Exclamatory expressions,
Participial phrases (abbreviations),
Prepositional phrases (abbreviations),
Pleonastic expressions.

A noun or pronoun in the nominative case may be: — **Uses of nominative**

Subject of a sentence,
Predicate nominative,
Independent by address,
Independent by exclamation,
Independent by pleonasm or specification,
Nominative absolute,
Nominative by apposition.

A noun or pronoun in the objective case may be: — **Of objective**

Object, direct or indirect, of a transitive verb,
Object of a preposition,
Objective or factitive predicate,
Adverbial objective,
    of measure, value, manner, time, place,
    retained object with passive verb.
Subject of an infinitive,
Independent by exclamation (rare),
Objective absolute (rare),
Objective by apposition.

A noun or pronoun in the possessive case may be: — **Of possessive**

A simple adjective modifier,
A predicate adjective modifier,
A substitute for the noun modified in any construction,
An idiom after *of*.

XVI. THE INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE

Asking questions

The declarative sentence, so far the only one discussed, makes an assertion. The interrogative sentence makes an inquiry. If we wish to give information, we make a statement. If we seek information, we ask a question, though we might merely state our desire. We might say, —

I desire to learn the distance from here to Ogden.

We do say, —

How far is it from here to Ogden?

Like declarative

The interrogative sentence is like the declarative in having a subject and predicate. The subject may be any of the elements used as subject of a declarative sentence, — and in addition sometimes an interrogative pronoun, — and may be modified in the same way; the predicate verb may be completed and modified in every respect like the predicate verb of a declarative sentence.

Difference

The interrogative sentence differs from the declarative either in the order of elements or in the presence of interrogative words, — or in both, — and in using the emphatic or the progressive form of the verb in the present and past tenses.

Question as to predication

The question may be as to the predication, *i.e.* as to whether what would be expressed by the same sentence in its declarative form is true or is not true. In this

Form

case the order of words is changed, the subject coming after the verb, or after the first auxiliary; and if the

verb — except *be* — is in the present or the past tense, the emphatic form is regularly used: — Inversion

Is your *father* at home?
Does your *mother want* a servant?
Have you been swinging in your garden?
Did Arnold betray his country?
Shall not the *Judge* of all the earth *do* right?
Might he not *have been* executed?

The natural answers to such interrogative sentences, if not the simple responsives, *yes* or *no*, will be, of course, the declarative sentences, affirmative or negative, of which they are variations, the pronouns of the first or second person being properly changed: — The answer

My father is at home.
My mother wants no servant.
I have been swinging in my garden.
Arnold betrayed his country.
The *Judge* of all the earth *shall* do right.
He might (not) have been executed.

The inquiry may be for the actor, the receiver of the act, the agent, or the person or thing in some way con- Another kind of question

Note. — If the sentence is alternative, the answer must be a statement concerning one or both of the alternatives: —

Shall you hunt or (shall you) fish?
I shall hunt. I shall fish.

The answer *yes* would mean, —

I shall either hunt or fish.

The answer *no* would mean, —

I shall neither hunt nor fish.

And neither of these statements answers the question, Shall you hunt or (shall you) fish?

cerned in the act. In this case, the question is usually asked by means of the interrogative pronouns, *who*, *which*, *what*, or the interrogative adjectives, *whose*, *which*, *what*, sometimes by an interrogative adverb: —

Who comes? *Whom* did you see?
For *whom* was the coat made?
What man, having drunk old wine, straightway desireth new?
Which coat will you buy?
Whose house is this?

A third kind

The inquiry may be as to the time, place, manner, degree, reason, purpose, consequence, or the like, of the action, being, or condition. In this case, the question is asked by means of the interrogative adverbs, *when*, *where*, *whence*, *whither*, *why*, *how*, *whereby*, *wherein*, *wherewith*, etc., or by a prepositional phrase containing an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb: —

When did you lose your daughter?
Where is your husband now?
How has this man been so deceived here in the city?
How wise, how young, how noble, is he?
Why do I trifle thus with his despair?
Wherewith shall a young man cleanse his way?
Since *when* have you been so pious?
For whom have I filed my mind?
What were you speaking *about?*
In whose name does the messenger come?
To what office does he aspire?

Place of interrogative word

It will be seen that the interrogative word in these direct questions is either at the beginning of the sentence or as near the beginning as possible; further, that the subject, unless it is the interrogative word, comes after the verb or after the first auxiliary; and that in the present and past tenses the emphatic or the progressive form of the verb is used.

Inversion

Answer

Such questions are naturally answered by substituting the answering word for the interrogative word, and then, pronouns of the first and second person being changed, arranging the parts of the sentence in the natural order: —

My father comes.
I saw *the new preacher.*
The *coat was* made for *myself.*
I lost my daughter *last year.*
My husband is in heaven now.
This *man has* been deceived *through sharp practice.*
You have filed your mind for *Banquo's son.*

Direct and inverted order

The order of the words in the interrogative sentence is called inverted, since the subject comes after the verb. The order of the declarative sentence is called direct. Sometimes, by a change in the inflection of the voice, a sentence with words in the direct order is made interrogative: —

You are going to let him escápe?
He would not give more than a thousand dóllars?

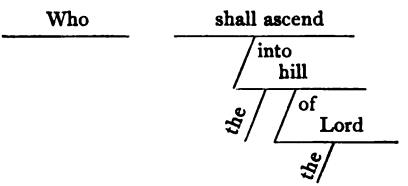
Punctuation. X. Every direct question is followed by the mark of interrogation.

Simple, compound, complex

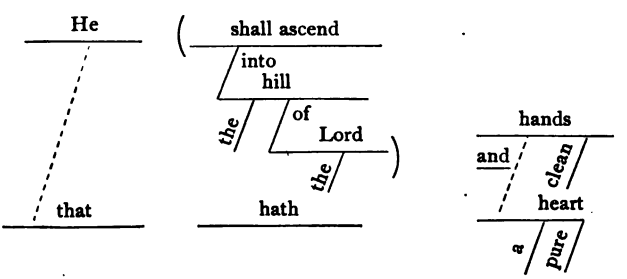
Interrogative sentences may, like declarative sentences, be simple, compound, complex, compound-complex, the interrogative clause or clauses always being independent.

Note. — Indirect questions will be discussed along with substantive clauses. The elements of the interrogative sentence occupy the same position in a diagram as those of a declarative sentence.

1. Who shall ascend into the hill of the Lord ?



2. He that hath clean hands and a pure heart.



EXERCISES

1. Canst thou minister to a mind diseased?

2. O death, where is thy sting? O grave, where is thy victory?

3. Can any good thing come out of Nazareth?

4. What shall it profit a man to gain the whole world and lose his own soul?

5. Your fathers, where are they? And the prophets, do they live forever?

6. Am I my brother's keeper? Is Saul also among the prophets?

7. Don't you remember sweet Alice, Ben Bolt?

8. What are the wild waves saying,
Sister, the whole day long?

9. You hear that boy laughing? You think him all fun?

10. What fairylike music steals over the sea,
Entrancing our sense with its charmed melody?

11. Which of them, he or Adrian, for a good wager, first begins to crow?

12. O star-eyed Science! hast thou wandered there,
To waft us home the message of despair?

13. Who would have thought the old man to have had so much blood in him?

14. Whence and what art thou, execrable shape?

15. Which way shall I fly
Infinite wrath and infinite despair?

16. How does the meadow flower its bloom unfold?

17. You are not like Cerberus, three gentlemen at once, are you?

18. When shall spring visit the mouldering urn?
When shall spring dawn on the night of the grave?

19. What mighty ills have not been done by woman?
Who lost Mark Antony the world? A woman.
Who was the cause of a long ten years' war?
And laid at last old Troy in ashes? A woman.

20. What boots it at one gate to make defence,
And at another to let in a foe?

21. What, all my pretty chickens and their dam at one fell swoop?

22. You condemn the fault and not the actor of it?

23. Whether of them twain did the will of his father?

24. Must we in all things look for the how, and the why, and the wherefore?

25. Which seems to you the nearest to heaven, Socrates drinking his hemlock, Regulus going back to the enemy's camp, or that old New England divine sitting comfortably in his study and chuckling over his conceit of certain poor women burned to death in his own town, and going roaring out of one fire into another?

26. Where is our usual manager of mirth?
What revels are in hand? Is there no play
To ease the anguish of a torturing hour?

27. Beautiful river! goldenly shining,
Birklands around thee, mountains above thee,
Rivilin wildest! do I not love thee?

XVII. THE IMPERATIVE AND THE EXCLAMATORY SENTENCE

Commands

The imperative sentence is used to express a command, requirement, wish, or entreaty: —

Go fetch me a quart of sack.
Take thrice thy money. *Bid* me tear the bond.
Come into the garden, Maud.
Do poor Tom some charity.

Imperative mood

The imperative sentence regularly uses the imperative mood of the verb. This, in its simplest form, is like the root infinitive; but the imperative is conjugated also in the emphatic and progressive forms. It has both active and passive voice, but only the present tense. As a command, or the like, is given directly to the person commanded, the imperative mood proper would be used only in the second person; and as the subject of the commanded action is supposed to be present, no noun or pronoun need be expressed to represent this subject. When a subject is expressed it usually follows the verb. The singular form is not distinguished from the plural.

Subject

The forms of the imperative are as follows: —

	SIMPLE	EMPHATIC	PROGRESSIVE
Active	love	do love	be loving
	give	do give	be giving
Passive	be loved	(do be loved)	
	be given	(do be given)	

Note. — *Beware* has only the infinitive and imperative forms.

Do be stirring, do be gone, do have done, are rather idiomatic than regular expressions.

Modifiers

The verb in the imperative sentence takes the complements and modifiers going along with verbs in other sentences; and the imperative sentence, like the declarative and interrogative, may be simple, compound, or complex, the imperative clause being the independent one: —

Simple, compound, complex

Come go with me and *be* my *love.*
Burn all the *records* of the realm.
Be aye *sticking* in a *tree,* Jack.
Follow thou *me.*
Comrades, *leave me* here a little.
Go ye into all the world and *preach* the *gospel.*
Bid them all fly: *be gone.*
Have done, have done; here comes the gentleman.
Do not *presume* too much upon my love.

First person

As the first person plural may really include a second (we = I and thou, I and he, etc.), there may be, and often is, in poetical expression what seems a first person plural imperative: —

Now *tread we* a measure. *Break we* our watch up.

Substitutes in first and third

A periphrastic imperative for the first and third persons is made by using the regular imperative of *let* with the infinitive and its subject accusative. This construction expresses, however, wish, instruction, or direction rather than a command: —

Let us *take* our leave.
Let him *be* no kinsman to my liege.
Let dogs *delight* to bark and bite.
Let no such man *be trusted.*
Let your loins *be girded* about, and *let* your lamps *be burning.*

Other substitutes for the real imperative, shading from a command or demand to a mere desire, are: —

Second person

For the second person, assertive sentences having the potential and obligative auxiliaries with an infinitive, —

> Thou *shalt have* no other gods before me.
> Ye *must be born* again.

For the first and third persons, sentences either assertive or imperative in form, with a verb in the (optative) subjunctive, —

> Then *seek* we not their camp.
> *Be* we bold and make despatch.
> No man *depart* save I alone.
> Thy will *be* done.
> The Lord *bless* you.
> God *prosper* your affairs.

For all three persons sentences in the interrogative form, with the potential auxiliary *may* and an infinitive: —

> *May* we never *know* worse sorrow.
> *May* you all *live* long and prosper.
> *May* my right hand *forget* her cunning.

Exclamation with

The real imperative sentence is often exclamatory, or accompanied by an exclamatory word or clause: —

> *Avaunt!* and quit my sight!

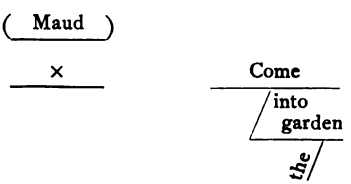
Vocative

It is also frequently accompanied by a word in the vocative or nominative by address, which, while it

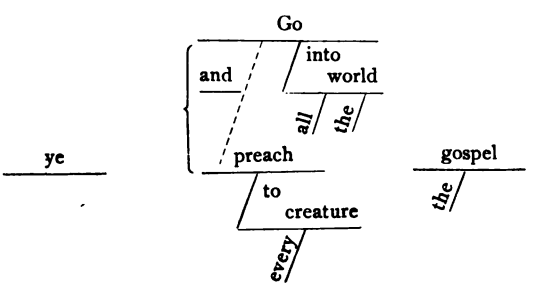
represents the same person or thing as the subject of the action, must not be taken as the subject: —

Exclamatory Exclamatory sentences are used to express strong feeling, — surprise, fear, admiration, disapproval, indignation, and the like: —

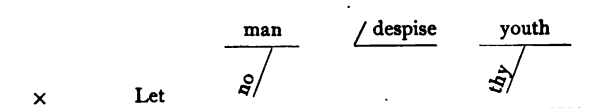
Note. — 1. Come into the garden, Maud.



2. Go ye into all the world and preach the gospel to every creature.



3. Let no man despise thy youth.



Who could have believed it!

Angels and ministers of grace defend us!

What a piece of work is man!

How daring is thy harsh rude tongue to sound unpleasant news!

I banish you! There is a world elsewhere!

O father Abraham, what these Christians are!

Introductory word

Form

It will be seen that the interrogative pronouns *who* and *what*, the interrogative adjective *what*, and the interrogative adverb *how*, are used to introduce exclamatory sentences in the interrogative form.

Other exclamatory sentences are in the declarative or the imperative form; and frequently the form of a dependent clause is used, that is, sentences are introduced by *what* and *how*, and retain the declarative form.

Exclamatory word

An exclamatory expression — a word or phrase — often stands at the beginning of a declarative, interrogative, or imperative sentence: —

What! This gentleman will out-talk us all.

O Heavens! Spake you not these words plain?

O gods! Who's yonder?

Mercy, how my head aches!

Punctuation. XI. An exclamatory sentence is followed by an exclamation point.

EXERCISES

1. O murderous coxcomb! What should such a fool do with so good a wife?

2. Let fortune empty her whole quiver on me.

3. Well, heaven forgive him and forgive us all!

4. O let me live my own and die so too!

5. Wal'r, my boy, may we never want a friend, nor a bottle to give him.

6. How good it feels, the hand of an old friend!

7. Trust no future, howe'er pleasant!
   Let the dead past bury its dead.

8. Hail to thee, lady! And the grace of heaven
   Enwheel thee round.

9. Bear from hence his body,
   And mourn you for him. Let him be regarded
   The most noble corse e'er followed to his urn.

10. Lay her in the earth,
    And from her fair and unpolluted flesh
    May violets spring.

11. Remember the Sabbath day to keep it holy.
    Thou shalt not kill. Thou shalt not steal. Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbor.

12. How bitter a thing it is to look at happiness through another man's eyes!

13. Let the damned one dwell
    Full in the sight of Paradise,
    Beholding heaven and feeling hell!

14. Part we in friendship from your land,
And, noble earl, receive my hand.

15. The devil take the goose,
And God forget the stranger!

16. Then must the Jew be merciful.
On what compulsion must I?

17. O wise and upright judge!
How much more elder art thou than thy looks!

18. Reap we not the ripened grain. Green be the turf above thee.

19. Forget thyself to marble. God send Rome one such other sight.

20. Let us then be up and doing. Don't cross a bridge before coming to it.

21. Beware of entering into a quarrel. False face must hide false heart.

22. What! Wouldst thou have a serpent sting thee twice?

23. O jealousy! Thou art nursed in hell.

24. O this learning! Live to learn and learn to live.

25. Know then thyself: presume not God to scan.

26. But let some prophet or some sacred sage
Explore the cause of great Apollo's rage,
Or learn the wasteful vengeance to remove
By mystic dreams.

27. Forbid it, gods! Achilles should be lost,
The pride of Greece, and bulwark of our host.

XVIII. THE COMPOUND SENTENCE

Elements of

As two or more coördinate words closely connected in thought may, taken together, form a compound subject or predicate in a simple sentence, so two or more statements, questions, or commands of equal importance, each expressing but a part of the thought to be uttered,

Definition

may be combined into a compound sentence. A compound sentence consists of two or more independent clauses expressing a single thought: —

Examples

A righteous man regardeth the life of his beast; but the tender mercies of the wicked are cruel.

Wisdom crieth without; she uttereth her voice in the street; her ways are ways of pleasantness; and all her paths are peace.

Are stolen waters sweet, and is bread eaten in secret pleasant?

Canst thou bind the sweet influence of the Pleiades; canst thou loose the bands of Orion; canst thou guide Arcturus with his sons; canst thou draw out Leviathan with a hook?

Go to the ant, thou sluggard; consider her ways and be wise.

Ask, and it shall be given unto you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you.

Clauses

The parts thus going together to make up a compound sentence are called clauses; and as each has in a measure the value of an independent assertion, question, or command, they are called independent clauses. With relation to each other, being of equal importance,

Kinds

they are called coördinate. A compound sentence may contain only declarative clauses, only interrogative

clauses, only exclamatory clauses, or only imperative clauses; or it may contain clauses of different kinds. Thus there are compound declarative, compound interrogative, compound imperative, compound exclamatory, and compound mixed sentences: —

One thing is needful, and Mary hath chosen that good part.
Seest thou a man diligent in business? he shall stand before kings.
Resist the devil and he will flee from you.
How long halt ye between two opinions? Choose ye this day whom ye will serve.

Let still the woman take
An elder; so wears she to him;
So sways she level in her husband's heart.

What is the end of Fame? 'tis but to fill
A certain portion of uncertain paper.

Another's sword has laid him low;
It was his brother's!

A group of independent clauses set over against another group, or a more comprehensive clause set over against a group of less comprehensive clauses, is called a member: — **Member**

Examples

I have fought a good fight, I have finished my course, I have kept the faith; | henceforth there is laid up for me a crown of glory.
The winter is past, the rain is over and gone; | the flowers appear on the earth, the time of the singing bird is come, and the voice of the turtle is heard in the land.

Connectives

Independent clauses may be connected by coördinating conjunctions; but frequently the connection in the meaning of the clauses is so close that no conjunction is used:—

The fathers have eaten sour grapes, *and* the children's teeth are set on edge.

Let us eat and drink; *for* to-morrow we shall die.

The race is not to the swift, *nor* is the battle to the strong.

God hath made man upright; *but* they have sought out many inventions.

Be ye angry and sin not; let not the sun go down on your wrath.

They grew in beauty side by side;
They filled one home with glee;
Their graves are severed far and wide.

Logical relations

The logical relation of the clauses is to be kept in mind. Thus clauses introduced by the relative pronouns *who* and *which*, if equivalent to *and he*, *she*, *they*, etc., or introduced by the adverbs *while*, *whereas*, *when*, and the like, if equivalent to *but*, although subordinate in form, are essentially independent, and go to make up compound, not complex, sentences. Such sentence may be called complex in form, but compound in meaning:—

I thrice presented him a kingly crown, *which* (= and it) he did thrice refuse.

They charged the jailer to keep them safely, *who* (= and he) thrust them into the inner prison.

I carried her to the bed, *where* (= and there) I laid her down.

At nightfall our horses were still full of spirit, *while* (= but) theirs were too jaded to proceed.

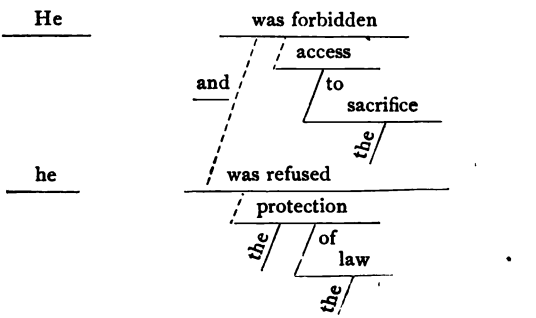
Punctuation. XII. Consecutive clauses in a compound sentence may be separated from each other by commas or by semicolons, according to the closeness of connection.

Punctuation. XIII. Members of a compound sentence, having parts subdivided by commas, should be separated from each other by semicolons; if the parts are subdivided by semicolons, the members should be separated by colons.

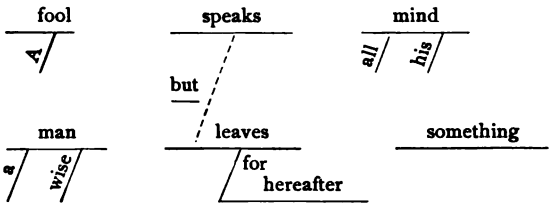
Punctuation. XIV. A clause added to a complete statement by way of explanation or inference, is preceded by a semicolon if a connective is used; otherwise, by a colon.

Punctuation. XV. Particulars in apposition with a general term are separated from each other by commas, and from the general term by a semicolon; but if the particulars are accompanied by formal modifying expressions, they are separated from each other by semicolons and from the general terms by a colon.

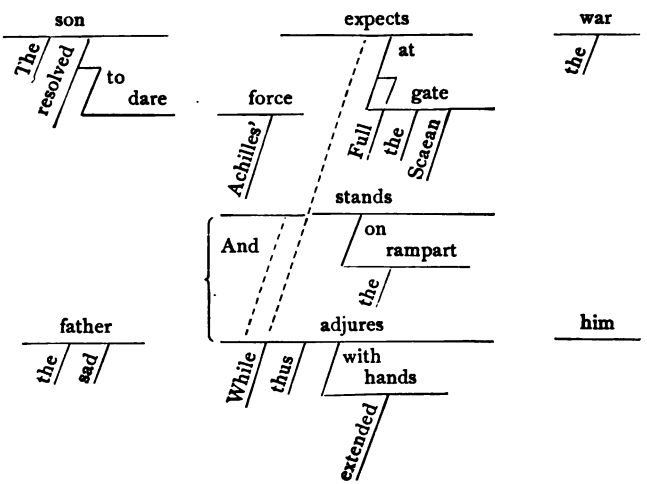
1. *Note.* — He was forbidden access to the sacrifice, and he was refused the protection of the law.



2. A fool speaks all his mind; but a wise man leaves something for hereafter.



3. The son resolved Achilles' force to dare,
Full at the Scaean gate expects the war;
While the sad father on the rampart stands,
And thus adjures him with extended hands.



EXERCISES

1. How far that little candle throws his beams !
   So shines a good deed in a naughty world.

2. Some are born great, some achieve greatness, and some have greatness thrust upon them.

3. Thou wear a lion's hide ! Doff it for shame,
   And hang a calf's skin on those recreant limbs.

4. Drink to me only with thine eyes,
   And I will pledge with mine;
   Or leave a kiss but in the cup,
   And I'll not look for wine.

5. Here we may reign secure; and in my choice
   To reign is worth ambition, even in hell:
   Better to reign in hell than serve in heaven.

6. O shame to men ! Devil with devil damned
   Firm concord holds; men only disagree
   Of creatures rational.

7. Westward the course of empire takes its way;
   The four first acts already past,
   A fifth shall close the drama with the day:
   Time's noblest offspring is the last.

8. Time flies, death urges, knells call, heaven invites,
   Hell threatens; be timely wise.

9. Sir, a woman's preaching is like a dog's walking on his hind legs: it is not well done; but you are surprised to find it done at all.

10. Go, poor devil, get thee gone; why should I hurt thee? this world surely is wide enough to hold both thee and me.

11. Truth is the handmaid of justice, freedom is its child, peace is its companion, safety walks in its steps, victory follows in its train; it is the brightest emanation from the gospel, it is the attribute of God.

12. He smote the rock of national resources, and abundant streams of revenue gushed forth; he touched the dead corpse of public credit, and it sprang upon its feet.

13. There is a pleasure in the pathless woods;
There is a rapture in the lonely shore;
There is society
By the deep sea, and music in its roar:
I love not man the less, but nature more.

14. Kings are like stars: they rise and set; they have
The worship of the world, but no repose.

15. O, call my brother back to me,
I cannot play alone;
The summer comes with flower and bee, —
Where is my brother gone?

16. Go, forget me, why should sorrow
O'er that brow a shadow fling?
Go, forget me, and to-morrow
Brightly smile and sweetly sing:
Smile, for I shall not be near thee;
Sing, for I shall never hear thee!

17. There were gentlemen and there were seamen in the navy of Charles II.; but the seamen were not gentlemen, and the gentlemen were not seamen.

18. Hitherto shalt thou come, but no farther;
And here shall thy proud waves be stayed.

19. They shall beat their swords into ploughshares, and their spears into pruning hooks; nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more.

20. Friendship is constant in all other things
Save in the office and affairs of love:
Therefore all hearts in love use their own tongues;
Let every eye negotiate for itself,
And trust no agent.

XIX. THE COMPLEX SENTENCE

Modifying clauses

It has been shown how a simple sentence can be extended, and be made to give a fuller and more accurate expression of thought by having modifying words and phrases added to its essential elements. In the same way modifying clauses may be added, each having its own subject and predicate; and these in turn may take all the modifying elements of the simple sentence. Such clauses are said to depend on the modified word, and to be subordinate to the clause in which the modified word is found. The term "subordinate" is extended to cover clauses entering into a sentence in the various offices of a noun. The sentence is now no longer simple, but complex.

Subordinate clauses

Definition

A complex sentence consists of an independent clause, and one dependent clause, or more than one.

Kinds of dependent clauses

Dependent clauses are named from their use in the sentence. Thus there are, — adjective clauses, modifying nouns and pronouns; adverbial clauses, modifying verbs, adjectives, and adverbs; and substantive clauses, performing many of the offices of a noun.

Connecting and introductory words

The connecting words between dependent and principal clauses are: —

Subordinating conjunctions;
Relative pronouns and adjectives;
Relative adverbs;
Interrogative pronouns, adjectives, and adverbs;
Indefinite relative and interrogative words.

I. ADJECTIVE CLAUSES

Adjective clause

Of dependent clauses, the adjective clause is the commonest and the simplest in construction. It is equivalent to an adjective used attributively or appositively, or to an adjective phrase. Its natural place is immediately after the modified word, though it occasionally precedes this: —

Place

An *affectionate* father = a father *who is affectionate.*
A man *skilled* in building = a man *who has skill* in building.
Work *done* by Chinamen = work *which has been done* by Chinamen = *which Chinamen have done.*
A rainbow *seen* by me = a rainbow *which I saw.*
A house *to sell* = a house *which is for sale.*
A *chattering* child = a child *that chatters.*
The man with a *broken* ear = the man *whose ear has been broken.*

Connectives

Adjective clauses are connected with the modified word in different ways, by: —

Relative pronouns, —

Bless the hand *that* gave the blow!
They never taste *who* always drink.
Such tears *as* angels weep, burst forth.
Man makes a death *which* nature never made.
Whatsoever I bid thee do, thou shouldst attempt (it).

Relative adjectives, —

He was absent a year, during *which* time his father failed.
That was he without *whose* life I had not been.

Relative adverbs, —

I know a bank *whereon* the wild thyme blows.
They shall return to the place *whence* they came.
The time was once *when* thou unurged wouldst vow.

Subordinating conjunctions, —

Canst thou remember a time *before* we came unto this cell?
We know the time *since* he was mild and affable.

The relative element in compound pronouns, —

What (= that *which*) he sought below is passed above.
I will accept *what* (= that *which*) you can give.

The relative element in compound adjectives, —

Take *whichever* way (= any way *which*) seems shortest.

Descriptive and restrictive clauses

Some relative clauses are restrictive, limiting what is asserted or otherwise expressed of the antecedent, to the antecedent as thus modified; some are merely descriptive, helping to give a clearer idea of that which the antecedent represents; some are merely additive, expressing what is equivalent to an independent assertion: —

The man *that hesitates* is lost.
Beware of a man *who has a cast in his eye.*
The tall, stout Englishman, *who was injured last evening,* has returned to London.
He had hands *that dangled a mile out of his sleeves.*
I made him a proposition, *which he accepted.*
They gave bread to the beggar, *who ate it greedily.*

That is more often used in restrictive clauses; *who* and *which* in descriptive and additive clauses.

Antecedent The antecedent of a relative pronoun may be a noun in its various offices: —

Subject, —

The *rain* which we have long expected has come.

Object, —

We are now having the *rain* which we expected.

Predicate nominative, —

He became an *officer* of whom his state was proud.

Predicate objective, —

They pronounced him a *criminal* who should be carefully guarded.

Object of preposition, —

He spoke of a *man* whom you all love.

Nominative of address, —

O good old *man*, who art right welcome.

Nominative of exclamation, —

O powerful love, that makes a beast a man.

Adverbial objective, —

He was in the vault an *hour*, which seemed an age.

Nominative absolute, —

The *man* who committed the deed escaping, his companion was detained as a witness.

Appositive, —

This person, a *being* whom all despise, is now let loose.

Possessive modifier, —

We envy no *teacher's* position whose youth is dead.

Number of clauses

Two or more nouns or pronouns in the same sentence may be modified by relative clauses, and the same word may be modified by two or more relative clauses. Clauses modifying the same word or words of the same rank are called coördinate with respect to one another; so that there are coördinate dependent, as well as coördinate independent, clauses: —

Coördinate dependent

Ye *who* listen to the whispers of fancy, *who* pursue the phantoms of hope, *who* expect that age will perform the promises of youth, attend to the history of Rasselas, Prince of Abyssinia.

He *that* observeth the wind shall not sow; and he *that* regardeth the clouds shall not reap.

Pronoun antecedent

Any pronoun, except a relative, may in any of its offices be the antecedent of a relative pronoun: —

Personal, —

Whom therefore ye ignorantly worship, *him* declare I unto you.

Demonstrative, —

That which you sow, shall ye also reap.

Interrogative, —

Who that is not insane, would think of such a thing?

Adjective, —

Some who were there, were dissatisfied.

Indefinite and compound relatives

The indefinite relatives, *what*, *who*, and their compounds, include their own antecedents: —

What (= *that* which) he says is true.
Who (= *he* who) steals my purse steals trash.
Whosoever (= any *person* who) believeth shall be saved.

Possessive antecedent

While ordinarily the noun or pronoun modified by a relative clause is in either the nominative or objective case, occasionally a possessive is thus modified: —

Noun, —

She slipped money into the *man's* hand who was to ride behind the coach.

Pronoun, —

His praise is lost who waits till all commend.

Clause antecedent

Which has sometimes an idea suggested by the principal clause, and sometimes the entire independent clause as antecedent; and occasionally this clause comes after the relative: —

For those that fly may fight again,
Which he can never do that's slain.
(= And *this, fighting again,* he can never do that's slain.)
And which is worse, *all you have done*
Hath been but for a wayward son.

That* and *those

That and *those* are used frequently for antecedents, instead of *it* and *they*: —

That which pleases most is his perfect frankness.
Those who favor the motion will say "ay."

It must be remembered that the relative word, besides connecting its clause with the modified word, also performs the office of substantive, adjective, or adverb in the dependent clause: — **Office of relative**

Substantive; subject, —

Those *who* came to scoff, remained to pray.

Object, —

He is the freeman *whom* the truth makes free.

Object of preposition, —

This is he for *whom* we prayed.

Adjective, —

'Tis she
Whose high imperious thoughts have punished me.

Adverb, —

We see the ground *whereon* these woes do lie.

The relative pronoun is often omitted in familiar, poetic, and vivid discourse: — **Relative omitted**

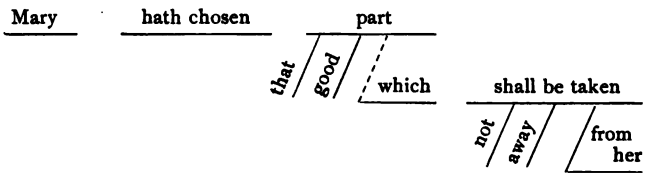
He is the man (whom) I swear by.
Take the terms (which) the lady made.
The souvenirs (that) he spoke of, the books (that) he read, the pictures (that) he admired, the flowers (that) he loved — what were they to him now?

The natural position of the relative clause is immediately after the antecedent. Sometimes for emphasis it precedes the antecedent. In either case there should be no intervening substantive. **Place**

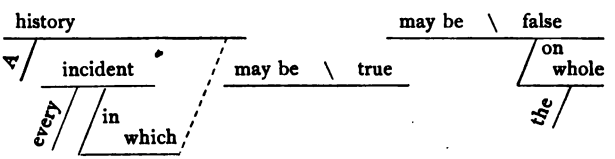
RULE XVIII. — *The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, person, and number, its case depending on its office in the subordinate clause.*

Punctuation. XVI. A relative clause not restrictive is usually set off from the rest of the sentence by commas.

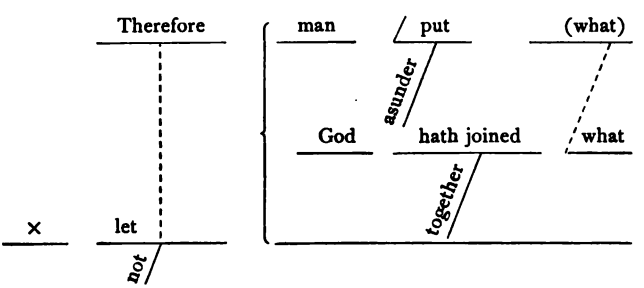
Note. — 1. Mary hath chosen that good part which shall not be taken away from her.



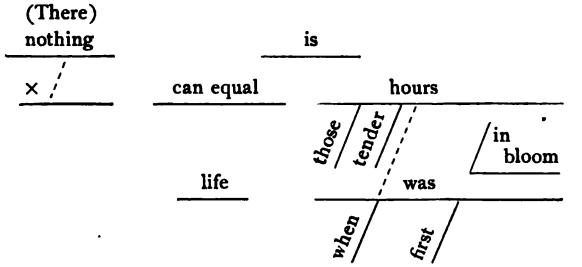
2. A history, every incident in which may be true, may on the whole be false.



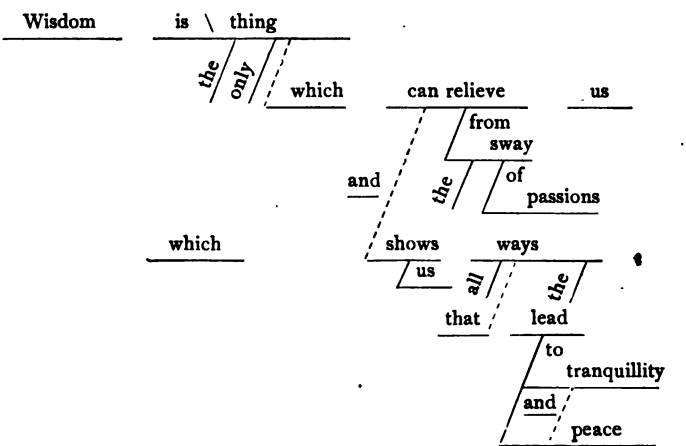
3. Therefore, what God hath joined together, let not man put asunder.



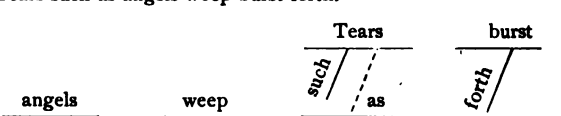
4. There is nothing can equal those tender hours when life was first in bloom.



5. Wisdom is the only thing which can relieve us from the sway of passions, and which shows us all the ways that lead to tranquillity and peace.



6. Tears such as angels weep burst forth.



EXERCISES

1. The man that hath no music in himself
   Is fit for treasons, stratagems, and spoils.

2. But I that am not shaped for sportive tricks,
   Have no delight to pass away the time.

3. Fame is the spur that the clear spirit doth raise
   To scorn delights and live laborious days.

4. We shall find no fiend in hell who can match the fury of a disappointed woman.

5. A jest's prosperity lies in the ear
   Of him that hears it, never in the tongue
   Of him that makes it.

6. Books receive their chief value from the stamp and esteem of ages through which they have passed.

7. Lo, the poor Indian! whose untutored mind
   Sees God in clouds or hears him in the wind;
   His soul proud Science never taught to stray
   Far as the solar walk or milky way.

8. Our Father which art in heaven, hallowed be thy name.

9. Who kills a man, kills a reasonable image, God's creature; but he who destroys a good book, kills reason itself.

10. Whatsoever thy hand findeth to do, do it with thy might.

11. Who dares think one thing and another tell,
    My heart detests him as the gates of hell.

12. Religion, of which the rewards are distant and which is animated only by faith and hope, will, uninvigorated by stated call to worship, glide by degrees out of the mind.

13. The boast of heraldry, the pomp of power,
And all that beauty, all that wealth e'er gave,
Await alike the inevitable hour.

14. Those that think must govern those that toil.

15. Thou art the source of all my bliss and woe,
That found'st me poor at first and keep'st me so.

16. The worthy gentleman who has been snatched from us at the moment of the election, has feelingly told us what shadows we are, and what shadows we pursue.

17. He spake of love, such love as Spirits feel
In worlds whose course is equable and pure.

18. Napoleon's troops fought in bright fields where every helmet caught some beams of glory; the British soldier conquered under the cool shade of aristocracy where no honors awaited his daring.

19. Know ye the land where the cypress and myrtle
Are emblems of deeds that are done in their clime?

20. Whom the gods love die young.
To be wroth with one we love
Doth work like madness in the brain.

21. He left a paper sealed up, wherein were found three articles as his last will: "I owe much, I have nothing, I leave the rest to the poor."

22. Blessings on him who first invented sleep, the mantle that covers all human thoughts, the food that appeases all hunger.

23. Count that day lost whose low descending sun
Views from thy hand no worthy action done.

24. Whoso sheddeth man's blood, by man shall his blood be shed.

25. He that complies against his will
Is of his own opinion still;
Which he may adhere to, yet disown
For reasons to himself best known.

26. He's truly valiant that can wisely suffer
The worst that men can breathe.

27. Time hath, my lord, a wallet at his back,
Wherein he puts alms for oblivion.

28. There is no such thing as solitude; nor is there anything that can be said to be alone, but God: who is his own circle in which he can subsist by himself.

29. O gentle sleep, whose lenient power thus soothes
Disease and pain, how sweet thy visit to me
Who waited thy soft aid!

30. He is one of those who see the 'ever shall be' in the 'what is,' while the generating causes remain the same.

31. There was something obscure and underhand about all this, that was little to the young man's fancy.

32. The day that to the shades the father sends,
Robs the sad orphan of his father's friends;
He, wretched outcast of mankind! appears
Forever sad, forever bathed in tears;
While those his father's former bounty fed,
Nor reach the goblet, nor divide the bread.

2. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES

Adverb clauses

Adverbial clauses modify verbs and verbal forms, less often adjectives, and rarely adverbs, except clauses introduced by correlative words. Adverbial clauses are equivalent to adverbs; they express, however, not only the modifications expressed by simple adverbs, but those expressed by prepositional, participial, and infinitive phrases, and by the nominative absolute construction. They are introduced by several classes of words: —

Subordinating conjunctions, —

Introductory words

If he comes, I must know it.
You were old *before* I was born.

Relative adverbs, —

Whither thou goest, I will go.
I came *when* I was called.

Indefinite relatives, —

Whenever he goes, we shall be well rid of him.
Wherever he lives, there is always trouble.
Whatever he may say, he will not be believed.
Whatever method he uses, he is sure to fail.
Whether he go or stay, our relations cease.

Adverbial objective clauses

The last three examples are rather to be classed as substantive clauses used as nouns in the objective case adverbially.

The adverb clause may modify a verb, an adjective, or an adverb: —

Used with verb

Verb, —

I will *go* where duty calls.
He must *wait* until I come.
The body was found *lying* where the accident occurred.
We were compelled *to wait* until the next train came in.

Adjective

Adjective, —

Angry because he was thwarted, he left his family.
Kind when he was sober, he was *fiendish* when he was drunk.

Adverb

Adverb, —

As a tree falleth *so* doth it lie.
We love our children *more* than we love ourselves.

Meanings

Adverb clauses express the same variety of meanings as the other adverbial expressions: —

Time, —

Nero fiddled *while Rome was burning.*
Thy beard has grown *since I saw thee last.*
No man can work *when the night cometh.*
Hell trembled *as he strode.*

Place, —

The wind bloweth *where it listeth.*
Whither thou goest, I will go.
Return *whence ye came.*

Manner, —

He does *as he likes.*
They walk *as if they were lame.*

Degree, —

The room is as hot *as the furnace was.*
They are more diligent *than they are wise.*
They did not come so soon *as we expected.*

Cause or reason, —

I rejoice *that you have come.*
We shall not go *because it is storming.*
It must be true *since he says it.*

Purpose, —

He died *that we might live.*
Repent *lest a worse evil befall you.*
He fled *in order that he might avoid punishment.*

Result, —

They sang *until they were hoarse.*
We shouted so loud *that we were heard a mile.*
The wind blew so *that roofs were torn off.*

Condition, —

If ye repent not, ye shall likewise perish.
Unless he changes, he will be ruined.
Provided you go, I shall accompany you.
Were he honest, he would return the money.
'Tis no matter how, *so he be dead.*

Concession, —

Though he is rich, he is parsimonious.
Although he denied it, he committed the crime.
However rich he is, he will give nothing.
Whatever he says, he has the document.
Whichever way he takes, there is no escape for him.

Introductory words interchanged

It is seen from the examples that several conjunctions may introduce different kinds of clauses: —

as, — time, manner, degree;
that, — purpose, result, reason;
until, — time, result;
so, — degree, condition,

and so on.

Inverted clauses of condition and concession

Condition and concession are often expressed by inverted clauses, with the verb in either the indicative or the subjunctive mood: —

Indicative, —

Hadst thou been here, my brother had not died.
Art thou weary, I will give thee rest.

Subjunctive, —

Were he Antony, there were an Antony.
Be thou angel or fiend, I'll follow thee.

Condition with imperative

A condition is often expressed by an imperative clause: —

Fling but a stone, the giant dies.
Let the commons but *hear* this, and they would kiss dead Cæsar's wounds.

Note. — Adverbial clauses introduced by participles used as subordinating conjunctions may be best explained as substantive clauses either by attaching the participle to a noun expressed or understood in the sentence, or by supplying a noun or pronoun in the absolute construction; or by considering the *active* participle introducing the clause, as a *passive* participle modifying the clause considered as a noun in the absolute construction, or in apposition with the provisional *it* in the absolute construction: —

That is strange, *considering* (that) he is your next neighbor.
That is strange, (*to one*) *considering* that he is your next neighbor.
That is strange, 'that he is your next neighbor' *being considered.*
That is strange, *it being considered* that he is your next neighbor.

Many adverbs and conjunctions go in pairs — the adverb modifying a word in the principal clause and being a sort of demonstrative antecedent to the conjunctive word introducing the dependent clause, and usually modifying a corresponding word in this clause. Such words are called correlatives. The most common are: — Correlatives

	there	*where*,
	then	*when*,
	yet	*though*,
	so	*as*,
	as	*as*,
	the	*the* (modifying comparatives),
(adj.)	*such*	*as* (relative pronoun),
	same	*as*,
	any comparative adj. or adv. .	*than*.

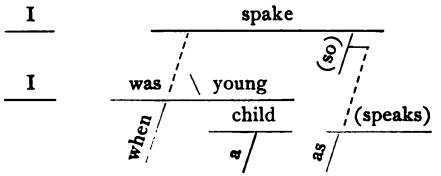
Where the bee sucks, *there* suck I.
When you love me, *then* I'll live.
Though he slay me, *yet* will I trust him.
He is not *so* proud *as* he seems (proud).
He is *as* wise *as* he is handsome.
The worse I behave, *the* better he treats me.
Such men *as* he (is) are rare.
He is *more* nice *than* (he is) wise.

Punctuation. XVII. Adverbial clauses, especially if preceding the clause on which they depend, are, unless

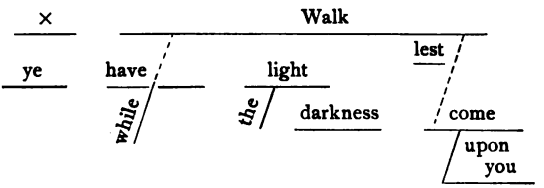
Note. — Many grammarians put together groups of words growing out of these constructions and call them conjunction phrases: *so that, as far as, so long as, no sooner than, as if, according as,* and many others.

very brief and closely related in meaning with this clause, separated from it by a comma.

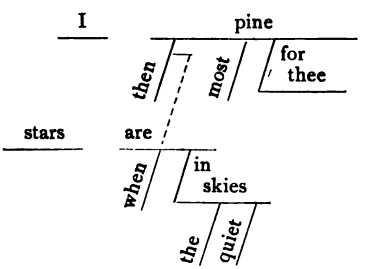
Note. — 1. When I was young, I spake as a child.



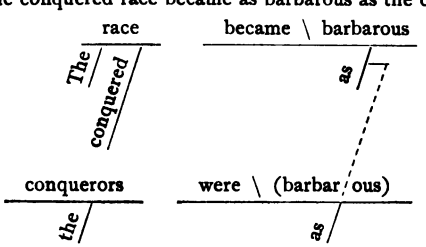
2. Walk while ye have the light, lest darkness come upon you.



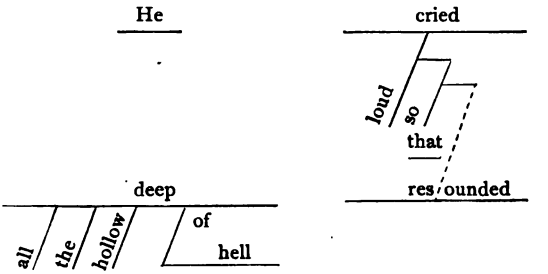
3. I then pine most for thee when stars are in the quiet skies.



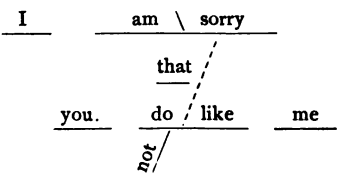
4. The conquered race became as barbarous as the conquerors were.



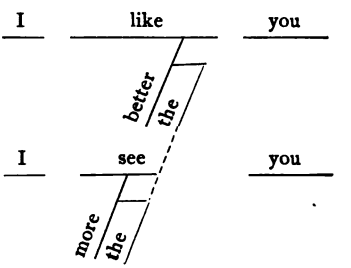
5. He cried so loud that all the hollow deep of hell resounded.



6. I am sorry that you do not like me.



7. The more I see you, the better I like you.



EXERCISES

1. When thou doest alms, let not thy left hand know what thy right hand doeth.

2. Where your treasure is, there will your heart be also.

3. If a house be divided against itself, that house cannot stand.

4. Such tricks hath strong imagination,
That, if it would but apprehend some joy,
It comprehends some bringer of that joy.

5. They are as sick that surfeit with too much as they (are sick) that starve with nothing.

6. When you do dance, I do wish you
A wave of the sea, that you might ever do
Nothing but that.

7. Had I but served my God with half the zeal (with which)
I served my king, he would not in my age
Have left me naked to mine enemies.

8. Throw a straw up into the air, you may see by that the way the wind blows.

9. And though on pleasure she was bent
She had a frugal mind.

10. Just are the ways of God,
And justifiable to men,
Unless there be who think not God at all.

11. For truth has such a face and such a mien
As to be loved needs only to be seen.

12. Wherever God erects a house of prayer,
The devil always builds a chapel there.

13. How blessings brighten as they take their flight!
Speak the speech as I pronounced it to you.
She is as gentle as she is beautiful.

14. One science only will one nature fit,
So vast is art, so narrow (is) human wit.

15. Is there a parson much bemused with beer,
He applies to me to keep him mad or vain.

16. How happy could I be with either
Were the other dear charmer away!

17. Lest men suspect your tale untrue,
Keep probability in view.

18. If I were an American, as I am an Englishman, while a foreign troop was landed in my country I would lay down my arms — never.

19. Where'er I roam, whatever realms I see,
My heart untravelled fondly turns to thee.

20. Let him return thence whence he came;
Then whither he goes, thither let me go.

21. She is ten times more gentle than her father's crabbed.
How much better it is to weep at joy than it is to joy at weeping.

22. The less an angry man talks, the better will it be for him.

23. When you blow your neighbor's fire, don't complain because the sparks fly into your face.

24. My heart is in the coffin there with Cæsar,
And I must pause till it come back to me.
Blow till thou burst thy wind!

25. Although his head may wear a golden crown,
Yet is a coward not a king.

26. Since fate will have me king, then fate may crown me.

27. Under God we are determined that, wheresoever, whensoever, or howsoever we shall be called to make our exit, we will die freemen.

28. The finest threads, such as no eye sees, if they are cunningly bound about the sensitive flesh so that the movements to break them would bring torture, may make a bondage worse than the bondage (is) of any fetters.

29. All knowledge which alters our lives, penetrates us more when it comes in the morning, than it does when it comes at night after the time of rest is near.

30. The white lies which a mind that keeps itself pure is as uneasy under as a great artist is under the false touches that no eye detects but his own, are worn as lightly as mere trimmings are, when once the actions have become lies.

31. Good name in man and woman, dear my lord,
Is the immediate jewel of their souls:
Who steals my purse, steals trash; 'tis something, nothing;
'Twas mine, 'tis his, and has been slave to thousands;
But he that filches from me my good name,
Robs me of that which not enriches him,
And makes me poor indeed.

32. For 'tis the mind that makes the body rich:
And as the sun breaks through the darkest clouds,
So honour peereth in the meanest habit.
What, is the jay more precious than the lark,
Because his feathers are more beautiful?
Or is the adder better than the eel,
Because his painted skin contents the eyes?

3. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES

Substantive clauses are equivalent to nouns, and are used in most of the constructions of nouns. They are introduced by — the conjunctions *that*, *whether*, rarely *if;* the interrogatives (introducing indirect questions) *how*, *what*, *when*, *whence*, *where* and its compounds, *which*, *whither*, *who*, *why;* and the indefinites *whoever*, *whatever*, *wherever*, etc. The introductory *that* is often omitted. Direct quotations used substantively, unless questions, have no introductory word.

Noun clauses

Introductory word

Substantive clauses have the following uses: —

Uses

Subject, —

Whether he can is doubtful.
That he never will is sure.
How he came is a mystery.

Predicate, —

The question was *how long he could stay.*
The proposition is *that I pay for the outing.*
The wonder was *whence he came.*

Object, —

They asked him *what he wanted.*
He told me *who he was.*
Men said *that the war would soon end.*

Object of preposition, —

We are comfortable except *that we are hungry.*
Ye have sinned in *that ye have betrayed the innocent one.*
There is no doubt about *how he did it.*

Appositive, —

We made a bargain *that each should pay half.*
The fact *that he stole the goods* is now apparent.
We ignored the question *whither we were going.*

Real subject after provisional *it*, —

It is certain *that the end is near.*
It is a query *how long this may last.*
Is it a fact *that you are married?*

Nominative absolute, —

Always (being) thought *that I require a clearness.*

Adverbial objective, —

They insisted *that we were wrong.*
We wondered *what the outcome would be.*
Men hesitate *whether to enlist or not.*
He was hopeful *that peace would soon return.*
Rob was afraid *that he would be left out.*

This last construction is like the adverbial objective noun in modifying a verb or an adjective without a connecting word; it differs in expressing other relations than measure, value, time, place, and manner. It is much like the Latin accusative of specification.

Adverbial objective and clause of reason or appositive clause

The adverbial objective use of the substantive clause is to be carefully distinguished from a clause of reason introduced by *that* and following a verb or an adjective, or a clause introduced by *that* and in apposition with a noun: —

Knowledge is proud *that* (= because) he has learned so much.

We are quite sorry *that* (= because) it is so.

There is no need *that* she be present = her presence is no need.

We have a hope *that* he will come = our hope is that he will come.

Introduced by indefinite

Conditional and concessive clauses introduced by the indefinite pronouns and adverbs, *whoever*, *whatever*, *wherever*, *however*, etc., may be classed with substantive clauses used as adverbial objectives, though some of them may, by supplying other words, be resolved into regular adverb clauses containing adjective clauses: —

Whoever may say it, I shall not believe it,

is equivalent to,

Though everybody who says anything may say it, I shall not believe it.

Whatever state I am in, I am therewith content,

is equivalent to,

With any state in which I may be, I am content.

However he may struggle, he cannot escape,

is equivalent to,

Though he struggle in any manner in which he may struggle, he cannot escape.

Wherever he may be, he will be happy,

is equivalent to,

If he is in any place where one may be, he will be happy.

Indefinite and compound relative

Pronouns and adjectives used indefinitely in these constructions are to be distinguished from the relative words *who*, *which*, *what*, and their compounds *whoever*, *whatever*, *whichever*, etc., having a compound use, *i.e.* containing or plainly implying an antecedent. Such words have a double office, the antecedent understood being a part of the independent clause, and being modified by the *relative adjective* clause introduced by the relative element: —

Who steals my purse steals trash = *He who* steals my purse steals trash.

Who overcomes by force has overcome but half his foe = *He who* overcomes by force has overcome but half his foe.

Whoever spoke it told the truth = *Any one who* spoke it, told the truth.

Compare these with: —

Whoever plots the sin, thou appointest the season = If one, or another, or another, plots the sin, thou appointest the season.

Relative and interrogative

Again, *adjective* clauses introduced by *who*, *which*, and *what*, used as compound pronouns or adjectives, must not be confused with *substantive* clauses in the form of indirect questions introduced by the interrogatives *who*, *which*, and *what*. Many sentences contain clauses that may be construed either way, but with a greater or less difference in meaning: —

We shall know *whom you saw* = We shall know the *person whom* you saw, or, We shall know *that you saw a certain person.*

We shall learn *what troubles you* = We shall learn the *thing* which troubles you, or, We shall learn *that a certain thing troubles you.*

He asked *what his visitor wanted* = He asked concerning *that which* his visitor wanted, or, He inquired *concerning his visitor's desire.*

That the *substantive* clause is interrogative may be seen by tracing it back to a direct question: —

He wonders *how you are getting on.*
He asks *how you are getting on.*
He asks, "*How are you getting on?*"
"*How are you getting on?*"
He reported *what you were doing.*
He investigated *what you were doing.*
He inquired *what you were doing.*
He asked, "*What are you doing?*"
"*What are you doing?*"

Direct quotations

Whether assertive, interrogative, imperative, or exclamatory in form, direct quotations are freely used substantively: —

"*Make way for liberty!*" he cried.
"*United we stand — divided we fall,*" is a good motto.
His favorite saying was, "*Never cross a bridge till you come to it.*"
Heywood's proverb, "*Beggars must not be choosers,*" is often misapplied.
He asked her, "*Is your name Katie Willows?*"

The connective *that* is often omitted: —

The thief doth fear ∧ each bush is an officer.
At lover's perjuries, they say ∧ Jove laughs.
He was so changed ∧ I scarcely knew him.

Punctuation. XVIII. A brief quotation, or expression of the nature of a quotation, is set off by commas; a quotation formally introduced is preceded by a colon.

Punctuation. XIX. Direct quotations are inclosed in marks of quotation.

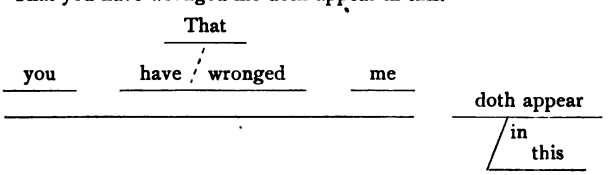
Note. — The omission of the substantive conjunction *that*, introducing object clauses after prepositions, has changed such prepositions to conjunctions, and changed such substantive clauses to adjective or adverb clauses: —

When *that* the poor have cried, Cæsar hath wept.

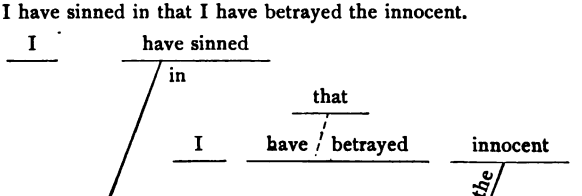
So this omission has made conjunctions of other parts of speech: —

But O the heavy change *now* thou art gone.
I shall go *provided* I have your commendation.
Once he require your voices, do not deny him.

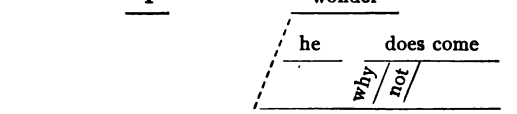
1. That you have wronged me doth appear in this.



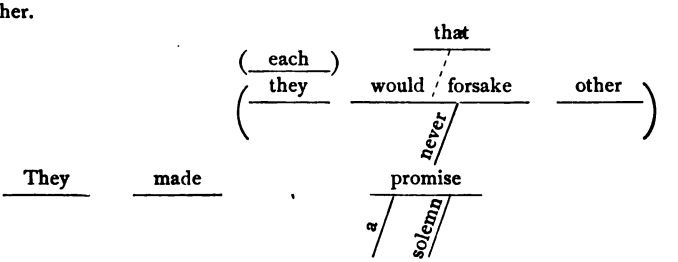
2. I have sinned in that I have betrayed the innocent.



3. I wonder why he does not come.



4. They made a solemn promise that they would never forsake each other.



EXERCISES

1. That I have taken away this old man's daughter is most true.

2. See what a rent the envious Casca made.

3. Still the wonder grew,
That one small head could carry all he knew.

4. What a man is and what he can do, are matters of the first importance.

5. I am convinced that we have a degree of delight in the real misfortunes and pains of others.

6. The scholar must know a subject itself, or he must know where to find information upon it.

7. The fault, dear Brutus, is in ourselves that we are underlings.

8. Who builds a church to God and not to fame,
Will never mark the marble with his name.

9. He heapeth up riches and knoweth not who shall gather them.

10. This mournful truth is everywhere impressed,
"Slow rises worth by poverty depressed."

11. My prime request, O you wonder, is that you tell if you be maid or no.

12. The plea that we have no time for culture will vanish as soon as we desire culture so much that we begin to examine our use of time.

13. Be first in thy calling, whatever it be.

14. Now conscience wakes the bitter memory
Of what he was, what is, and what may be.

15. Let none admire
That riches grow in hell.

16. Many imagine they have finished a task when they have hardly perceived what the task really is.

17. A woman who marries an old man, expecting that he will soon die, hangs herself in the hope that some one will come and cut the halter.

18. When Bishop Berkeley said, "there was no matter,"
And proved it, — 'twas no matter what he said.

19. The reply of Socrates to him who asked whether he should choose a wife, still remains reasonable, that whether he should choose one or not he would repent it.

20. Let us hear the conclusion of the whole matter: "Fear God and keep his commandments; for this is the whole duty of man."

21. The reason why so few marriages are happy is that so many young ladies spend their time in making nets when they should be making cages.

22. And he gave it for his opinion that whoever could make two ears of corn or two blades of grass grow upon a spot of ground where only one had grown before, would deserve well of mankind and render essential service to his country.

23. 'Tis greatly wise to talk to our past hours
And ask them what report they bore to heaven.

24. I have always looked upon it as the worst condition of man's destiny, that persons are so often torn asunder just as they become happy in each other's society.

25. She wished that Heaven had made her such a man.

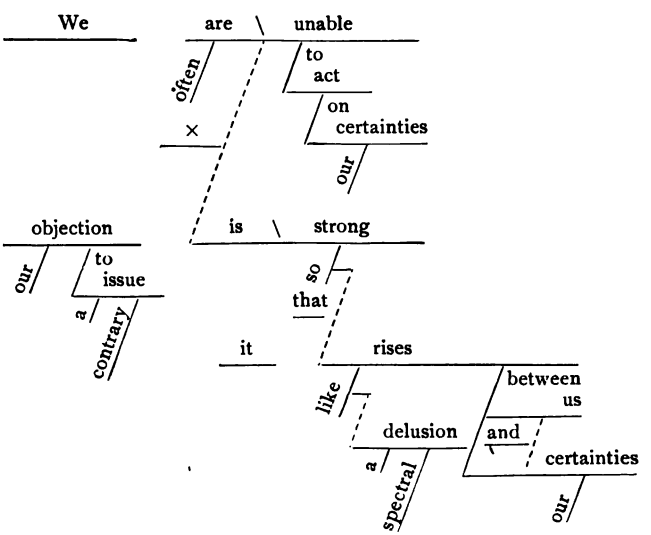
26. Of praise a mere glutton, he swallowed what came,
And the puff of a dunce, he took it for fame;
Till, his relish grown callous almost to disease,
Who peppered the highest was surest to please.

XX. THE COMPOUND-COMPLEX SENTENCE

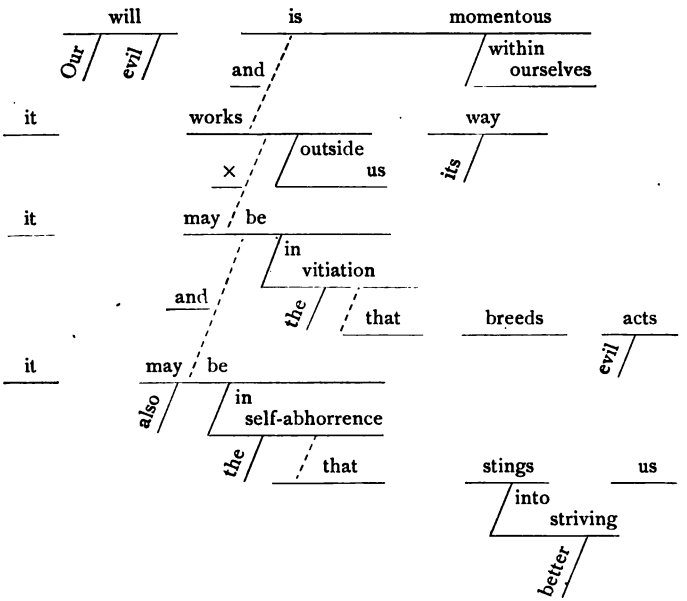
Explanation A compound-complex sentence consists of two or more independent members, at least one of which contains a dependent clause. The members may be joined by coördinating conjunctions, or not, according to the closeness of connection, the clearness of their relation, the peculiarity of construction, and the use of the same connectives between subordinate elements. No elements enter into the compound-complex sentence which have not already been discussed.

Note. —

1. We are often unable to act on our certainties; our objection to a contrary issue is so strong that it rises like a spectral delusion between us and our certainties.



2. Our evil will is momentous within ourselves, and it works its way outside us; it may be in the vitiation that breeds evil acts, and it may also be in the self-abhorrence that stings us into better striving.



EXERCISES

1. Why, all the souls that were, were forfeit once;
And he that might the vantage best have took
Found out the remedy.

2. You take my house when you do take the prop
That doth sustain my house; you take my life
When you do take the means whereby I live.

3. He that has light within his own clear breast,
May sit in darkness and enjoy bright day;
But he that hides a dark soul and foul thoughts,
Benighted walks under the mid-day sun.

4. I do not know what I may appear to the world; but to myself I seem like a boy playing on the seashore, and diverting myself by now and then finding a smoother pebble or a prettier shell, while the great ocean of truth lies all undiscovered before me.

5. For forms of government let fools contest;
Whatever is best administered is best:
For modes of faith let graceless zealots fight;
His can't be wrong whose life is in the right.

6. The law is a sort of hocus-pocus science that smiles in your face while it picks your pocket; and the glorious uncertainty of it is of more use to its professors than is the justice of it.

7. "Live while you live," the epicure would say,
"And seize the pleasure of the present day;"
"Live while you live," the sacred preacher cries,
"And give to God each moment as it flies."

8. Let the traitor go abroad to a distant country; let him go to some place where he is *not* known: don't let him go to the devil where he *is* known.

9. Be noble! and the nobleness that lies
In other men, sleeping but never dead,
Will rise in majesty to meet thine own.

10. To delight in doing things because our fathers did them is good, if it shuts out nothing better: it enlarges the range of affection; and affection is the broadest basis of good life.

11. I have known persons who have been suspected of undervaluing gratitude; but on closer observation it has been seen that, if they have never felt grateful, it has been for want of an opportunity.

12. In the ages since Adam was married, it has been good for some men to be alone; it has also been good for some women.

13. The older I grow — and I now stand upon the brink of eternity — the more comes back to me the sentence in the catechism which I learned when a child, and the fuller and deeper becomes its meaning: "What is the chief end of man? To glorify God, and to enjoy him for ever."

14. Great men are the fire-pillars in this dark pilgrimage of mankind; they stand as heavenly signs, everlasting witnesses of what has been, prophetic tokens of what may still be, the revealed embodied Possibilities of human nature.

15. The man without a purpose is like a ship without a rudder: a waif, a nothing, a no man. Have a purpose in life, if it is only to kill and divide and sell oxen well, but have a purpose; and having it, throw such strength of mind and muscle into your work as God has given you.

16. How much lies in laughter: the cipher-key, wherewith we decipher the whole man! The man who cannot laugh is not only fit for treasons, stratagems, and spoils; but his whole life is already a treason and a stratagem.

XXI. ABBREVIATED OR INCOMPLETE SENTENCES

Complete sentence

A sentence is complete when all its elements — essential, modifying, and connective — are fully expressed. When any element necessary to the regular structure of a sentence is omitted, the sentence is incomplete, or abbreviated. Elements which the mind may easily supply from what is expressed, especially relative pronouns and connectives, verbs or predicate words understood from a previous clause, and clauses after comparative words, are frequently omitted in colloquial, poetic, and vivid or emotional prose discourse.

Incomplete sentence

Omission of verb

A verb common to two or more clauses in a compound sentence, is often omitted in all but one clause: —

Pride goeth before destruction; and a haughty spirit (goeth) before a fall.

Love is strong as death; jealousy (is) cruel as the grave.

Seven hours to law (allot), to soothing slumber seven (allot),
Ten to the world allot, and (allot) all to Heaven.

Subject and verb

A subject and verb common to two or more clauses may be expressed in one, and *understood* in the others: —

If they are rich, they go to enjoy; if (they are) poor, (they go) to retrench; if (they are) sick, (they go) to recover.

Single verb

The verb is sometimes omitted in a single clause in vivid writing: —

Short (was) his career and (it was) ably run.

Why (is) this so rare?

Predicate word

A common predicate noun or adjective may be omitted in the same way: —

You are a heathen; your sister is not (a heathen).
This scheme is practicable; that is not (practicable).

Most of a clause

This kind of abbreviation may be carried to such an extent that all of a second clause disappears except a single element, essential or modifying: —

He was purchasing books, and he was purchasing pens.
He was purchasing books, and purchasing pens.
He was purchasing books and pens.

Changed to simple sentence

It is better to think of this last form, and similar remains of compound sentences, as simple sentences with a compound element, — subject, verb, predicate, or object.

In dependent clauses

The subject and forms of the verb *be* are often omitted in dependent clauses of condition, concession, time, and place: —

It is remarkable if (it is) true.
Though (it is) almost incredible, we believe it.
When (it is) found, make a note of it.
Wherever (they are) found, they are greatly prized.
While (he was) trying to escape, he was shot.
Are you hurt? If (you are) not (hurt), speak.

Questions and answers

In answers to questions, in questions after statements, and in answers to such questions, the entire question or statement first made may be carried forward in the

mind, and only a few words, or even a single word, need be expressed: —

I shall not go up the cañon to-morrow.
Why (shall you not go up the cañon to-morrow)?
(I shall not go up the cañon to-morrow) because it is too cold for good fishing.
When you do go (up the cañon), who will go with you?
John (will go with me when I do go up the cañon).

Relative word or connective

The relative pronoun or other connective is frequently left to be supplied: —

There is a pleasure (which) only poets know.
It is so plain (that) he who runs may read.
It is no wonder (that) he came.

Interrogative for clause

An interrogative word may represent a clause which it would introduce, and which is apparent from the context: —

He has escaped, no one knows *how* (he has escaped).
I shall do it, and I will tell you *why* (I shall do it).
He was gone, the Lord only knows *how* long (he was gone).
One of us must die, it matters not *which* (one of us must die).
Somebody has been here, I'd like to know *who* (has been here).

Infinitive or participle

An infinitive or participle sometimes with its object or complement, sometimes alone, is omitted in one clause of a compound sentence, being carried over in mind from a preceding clause: —

He did *go*, but I did not (go).
He has *been rewarded* and so have I (been rewarded).
This pig has *been to market*, this (pig) has not (been to market).
They may *eat sour grapes*, we may not (eat sour grapes).
They might *have saved their lives*, they did not (save their lives).
He would not *run*, though (he was) told to (run).

So as substitute

The adverb *so* is often, for the sake of brevity, substituted for an adjective, or substantive expression: —

He was *incredulous;* he is *so* no longer.
It was thought *that Othello had won Desdemona by unfair means;* it is not thought *so* now.
Though he was not at first *willing to have this property sold to the highest bidder*, a few words from the judge made him *so*.

Do as substitute

The verb, *do*, is made to render a like service as substitute for predicate expressions: —

His father seldom *gave him a blow;* but when he *did* (give him a blow) it was a stinger.
We were invited to *attend the ball and participate in all the festivities;* and we *did* (attend the ball and participate in all the festivities).

After *than* and *as*

Clauses after comparative expressions followed by *than* or *as* are often much abbreviated; but in most cases the ellipsis is easily supplied, as these conjunctions are regularly followed by the same construction which precedes them: —

They builded better *than* they knew (that or how they were building well).
They are wiser *than* their fathers (are wise).
He is more nice *than* (he is) wise.
She is as handsome *as* (she) ever (was handsome).
Love thy neighbor *as* (thou lovest) thyself.

More difficult ellipses

Many ellipses in clauses after *than* and *as* are not so easily supplied. In such expressions as: —

I think of him *as* (I would think of) a friend,

where *friend* and *him* represent the same person, it is just as well to disregard the omitted words and consider *friend* an appositive of *him*, and *as* a mere appositive connective; so in the expression: —

I should consider this *as* (I should consider a thing) quite expedient.

The adjective, *expedient*, may be called an appositive modifier, with *as* an appositive connective.

Other examples of abbreviation which may be disposed of in the same way are: —

He was a failure *as* (= in the character of) a schoolmaster.
I should like him *as* (= in the relation of) a friend, but not *as* (= in the relation of) a son-in-law.

Note. — The construction following *than* after a comparative may seem clearer if it is remembered that *than* is only the adverb *then* converted: —

I am taller *than* you = I am taller; *then* you are tall.
He is more nice *than* wise = He is more nice; *then* he is wise.

Sometimes, to supply an ellipsis, the construction must be changed, the *idea* remaining the same: — **Construction changed**

We shall *make* cider *as* long *as* (*making* cider is) possible.

This is equivalent to, —

Making cider shall continue *as* long *as making cider* is possible.

The young people *stayed* longer to dance *than* (staying to dance) was wise.

This is equivalent to, —

Staying to dance was continued longer *than* staying to dance was wise.

I will come as early *as* (early *coming* is) possible.

The idioms *had as lief*, *had better*, and *had rather* with an infinitive may be mentioned again here. *Had* is a past subjunctive equivalent to should have = should hold = should consider. The expression: — **Had as lief, rather, better, etc.**

I *had* better go than stay,

expanded would be, —

I *had* (= held) (to) go better than I *had* (= held) (to) stay;

I *should hold* going better than I *should hold* staying;

I *should consider* go (= to go = going) better than I *should consider* stay (= to stay = staying);

I *should consider* going better than I should consider staying.

So with the other idioms.

As though and *as if*

In conditional sentences after *as if* and *as though*, the conclusion is often omitted: —

He walks *as* (he would walk) *if* he were lame.

I shall buy of him *as* (I should buy of him) *if* he had always treated me fairly.

So, as, and infinitive

In clauses of purpose and result after *so*, a clause introduced by *as* and followed by an infinitive is omitted: —

Let us *so* live *as* (one would live, or ought to live) to gain men's favor.

They *so* schemed *as* (people do scheme) to win the prize.

Omission of nominative absolute

The noun or pronoun in the nominative absolute construction, followed by a degree clause introduced by *as*, is often omitted: —

(We being as) stingy *as* we are (stingy), you are stingier.

(You having wronged me as) much *as* you have wronged me, I forgive you.

Result of

From this omission some participles have come to be used as prepositions or conjunctions: —

(We) *seeing* (that) you were in the war, no tax will be asked of you.

(One) *considering* his age, he is in good health (*i.e.* his age being considered).

(It being) *provided* (that) he comes, our quota will be full.

Expressions apparently independent

Some infinitive and participial expressions, and some prepositional phrases, apparently independent, but hav-

ing an adverbial value, really depend on a parenthetical statement suppressed: —

(For I am going) *to make* a long story short, I will say, etc.
(I may say, speaking) *to the best of my knowledge and belief* (that) he is honest.
(I will say) *generally speaking*, (that) men will do what is to their own advantage.

In familiar expressions

In many familiar expressions, a word or phrase, or even an independent clause, essential to the grammatical construction, if perfectly understood by the hearer, is omitted: —

He will be twenty-one (years old) the twenty-fifth (day of this month).
Dinner will be served at half-past two (o'clock).
(I) thank you. (May the Lord) bless you! (May the powers) confound you!
(I give you) many thanks. (I wish you a) good evening.

In imperative sentences

In imperative sentences the subject is regularly omitted. Often, too, the verb is omitted, and adverbs of motion remain alone, or modified: —

Note. — Building up the sentence in this way, however, often makes what is logically dependent, grammatically independent. This difference between the logic and the grammar of a sentence is still more marked if we put into proper grammatical relation with the rest of the sentence such expressions as, *you know, you see, I tell you, I suspect, I declare.* While the real office of these expressions is to call attention to the principal thought, or lay emphasis upon it, they are grammatically the subject and predicate of a sentence, of which all the rest is the object. Together with such expressions as, *as it were, so to speak, to be sure, not to be tedious*, and the whole list of "by-words," they may be called independent, or interjectional expressions.

(Get) *down* on your knees, and thank heaven.
(Get) *down!* Thou climbing sorrow.
(March) *on!* Stanley; (go) *on!*

Conclusions In conditional, interrogative, and exclamatory sentences, the entire conclusion, except the interrogative word, is sometimes omitted:—

What (do we care) though the field be lost? All is not lost.
How (will you do) if your husband start some other where?
What (shall it concern us) though the common people favor him?

Not The adverb *not* is occasionally the only representative of an independent clause, followed by a clause of result or reason, or a substantive clause:—

(I slew him) *not* that I loved Cæsar less, but that I loved Rome more.
Wild ambition loves to slide, (wild ambition loves) *not* to stand.

The expressions, *not but* and *not but that*, sometimes found in a similar construction, involve too many negatives and conjunctions to be used safely.

But after negative *But*, after a negative, *not*, *nothing*, *little* = *not much*, may frequently be construed as a preposition equivalent to except, and governing an infinitive. This phrase often follows an abbreviated statement in which the ellipsis is easily supplied. If *but* is called a conjunction, the ellipsis is quite as easily supplied:—

She cannot (do anything else) *but* (= except) grieve for him.

Or,

She cannot (do anything else) *but* (she can) grieve for him.

He did little (else) *but* (= except) (to) eat.

Or,

He did little (else) *but* (he did) eat.

Exclamatory expressions

Exclamatory expressions are frequently abbreviated sentences: —

O (it is) shocking!

O (think of) the pity of it!

How absurd (it is)!

(I cry) shame upon you!

O (it is a pity) that men should put an enemy into their mouths to steal away their brains!

Independent clause omitted

The whole principal clause is often omitted before dependent clauses of condition or wishing, or both combined: —

O (I long) for the touch of a vanished hand!

(I wonder what you would think) had you but seen my mother!

(You talk) as (you would talk) if I could love such a man!

If only he would come (I should be content).

Prepositional phrase left

Sometimes a prepositional phrase is all that remains of a clause in a compound sentence: —

She says that he jilted her; (the truth is) *far from it.*

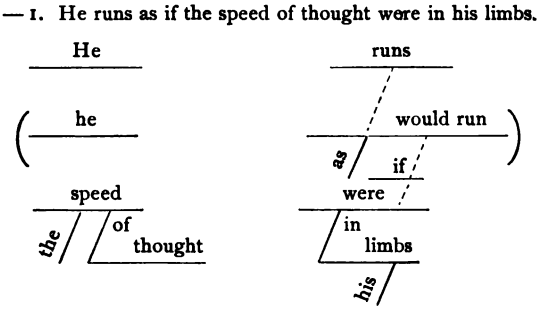
He claimed to have been neglected; (he was so) *far from this* (that every one helped him in every way).

Other abbreviations

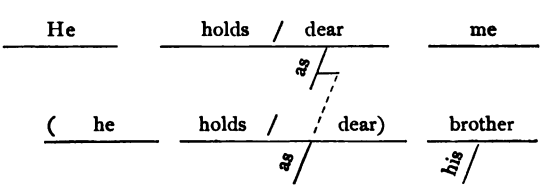
These are some of the commonest abbreviated sentences. There are others for which a study of these will suggest the explanation. There are others which, instead of supplying the ellipsis, it seems best to construe just as they stand, they conform so nearly to usual constructions. Still others are such mere remnants, or are left so peculiar by ellipses and inversions, that it is best to call them "idiomatic expressions," that is, constructions that do not conform to general linguistic usage, but are peculiar to the language where they are found.

Punctuation. XX. The ellipsis of a verb, sometimes of another word, understood from a preceding clause, is marked by a comma.

Note. — 1. He runs as if the speed of thought were in his limbs.



2. He holds me as dear as his brother.



EXERCISES

1. To live in hearts we leave behind is not to die.
2. I stood among them, but not of them.
3. I do desire we may be better strangers.
4. We have scotched the snake, not killed it.
5. Throw physic to the dogs; I'll none of it.
6. It is not, nor it cannot come to good.
7. Costly thy habit as thy purse can buy,
   But not expressed in fancy.
8. Anger wishes that mankind had two necks; love, that it had two hearts.
9. I was the man the duke spoke to.
10. Claret is the liquor for boys; port, for men.
11. From toil he wins his spirit light;
    From busy day, the peaceful night.
12. I am nothing if not critical.
13. Ships are but boards; sailors, but men.
14. I am a man more sinned against than sinning.
15. Tell me, how is fancy bred?
    Or in the heart, or in the head?
    How begot, how nourished?
16. Thou makest a testament as worldlings do.
17. Well said; that was laid on with a trowel.
18. Let bears and lions growl and fight,
    For 'tis their nature to.
19. Nor love thy life nor hate; but what thou livest,
    Live well; how long or short permit to heaven.
20. The lion is not so fierce as painted.
21. Golden lads and girls all must
    As chimney sweepers come to dust.

22. Get wealth and place; if possible, with grace:
If not, by any means, get wealth and place.

23. In words, as fashions, the same rule will hold
Alike fantastic if too new or old.

24. True ease in writing comes from art, not chance.

25. A fool at forty is a fool indeed.
Condemn the fault and not the actor of it.

26. Get money, boy; no matter by what means.

27. Though deep, yet clear; though gentle, yet not dull;
Strong without rage; without o'erflowing full.

28. Thus woe succeeds a woe as wave a wave;
A fig for care! A fig for woe!

29. She is as beautiful as sweet; as young as beautiful; as soft as young; as gay and innocent as soft.

30. As good to be out of the world as out of fashion.

31. And virtue, though in rags, will keep me warm.

32. As a wit he was, if not first, in the very first rank.

33. Thank you, sir; I owe you one.

34. To reign is worth ambition, though in hell.

35. Where was she born? In Argier. Was she so?

36. I say thou liest. Do I so?

37. I have loved you more as son than as brother, let me tell you.

38. Beauty comes, we scarce know how, and goes we know not where; but her sources are deeper than herself.

39. What matter to me, if their star is a world?

40. O for a lodge in some vast wilderness!

41. Here is everything advantageous to live. True: save means to live.

42. To the memory of the Man, first in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen.

43. The blood more stirs to rouse a lion than to start a hare.

44. A bard here dwelt more fat than bard beseems.

45. For where is any author in the world
Teaches such beauty as a woman's eye?

46. I hold the world but as the world, a stage
Where every man must play his part,
And mine a sad one.

47. If to do were as easy as to know what 'twere good to do, chapels had been churches, and poor men's cottages, rich men's palaces.

48. For who would lose though full of pain, this intellectual being?

49. Back to thy punishment, false fugitive!

50. Rise with the lark and with the lark to bed.

51. Hast any philosophy in thee, shepherd?

52. I'd rather have a fool to make me merry than experience to make me sad.

53. So wise so young, they say, do never live long.

54. There lives more faith in honest doubt,
Believe me, than in half their creeds.

55. There is no death; what seems so is transition.

56. The cares that infest the day,
Shall fold their tents like the Arabs,
And as silently steal away.

57. Trust no future, howe'er pleasant.

58. I envy them, you know, those monks of old;
Their books they read, and their beads they told.

59. Leaves have their time to fall,
And flowers to wither at the north wind's breath,
And stars to set.

60. Beggar that I am, I am poor even in thanks.

61. Much as he desired the lady, he desired her wealth more.

62. So far from granting thy request, I depise thee for thy wrongful suit.

63. Pray thee, take care, that takest my book in hand,
To read it well.

64. If it should thunder as it did before,
I know not where to hide my head.

65. Hadst thou but felt the pain for him which I did once!

66. I had as lief not be, as live to be in awe of such a thing as I myself.

67. We call some books immortal. Do they live?
If so, believe me, time has made them pure.

68. I had rather that he should shrive me than wive me.

69. And weep ye now, seeing she is advanced above the clouds?

70. Seeing thou fallest on me so luckily, I'll assail thee.

71. And, to be short, what is she not, that is sweet and happy?

72. A dwarf, when on the giant's shoulders, sees farther than the giant.

73. Not that I loved Cæsar less, but that I loved Rome more.

74. He was appointed; not that his qualifications are superior, but his friends had influence.

75. No matter what he says, he will be convicted.

76. It is a "strange coincidence," to use a phrase
By which such things are settled, nowadays.

77. Assuming what he says to be true, there are still many things to be accounted for.

78. Sink or swim, live or die, survive or perish, I give my hand and my heart to this vote.

79. Though an angel should write,
Still 'tis devils must print.

80. A plague upon all cowards, I say.

81. Courage, man; the hurt cannot be much.

82. Fie, my lord! A soldier and afraid?

83. By the pricking of my thumbs
Something wicked this way comes.

84. Farewell, a long farewell to all my greatness.

85. The Ides of March are come. Aye, Cæsar, but not gone.

86. The scene was more beautiful far to the eye
Than if day in its pride had arranged it.

87. She is beautiful, and therefore to be wooed.

88. Then I shall see thee again? Aye, at Philippi.

89. For this relief much thanks.

90. "Where dwellest thou?" "Under the canopy."

91. So to your pleasures:
I am for other than for dancing measures.

92. Talking of ghosts, did you ever hear of Sam Johnson's interest in them?

93. I am more serious than my custom; you must be so too.

94. Your "If" is your only peacemaker; much virtue in an "If."

95. Why should every creature drink but I?

96. Books cannot always please, however good.

97. O, that I were a glove upon that hand
That I might touch that cheek!

98. Though last, he is not least in love.

99. Too swift arrives as tardy as too slow.

100. Ah Christ, that it were possible
For one short hour to see
The souls we loved that they might tell us
What and where they be.

INDEX

A, an, 39.
Abbreviated sentences, 286.
  exercises on, 297.
Abbreviation, 222.
Absolute case, 182.
Abstract nouns, 7, 200.
Accusative, 145.
Active voice, 48.
  for passive, 49, 200.
Adjectives, 32, 33, 135.
  appositive, 34, 103, 158.
  attributive, 34, 156.
  demonstrative, 37.
  descriptive, 34.
  exercises on, 40.
  factitive, 33.
  for noun, 15, 16.
  for adverb, 109, 172.
  indefinite, 35.
  interrogative, 37.
  numeral, 38.
  participial, 33, 211, 213.
  possessive, 37.
  predicate, 33, 156.
  pronominal, 36.
  relative, 37.
  restrictive, 34.
Adjective clauses, 252.
  exercises on, 260.
  place of, 252.
Adjective phrases, 187.
  place of, 188.
Adverb, 99, 135, 171.
  conjunctive, 98.
  exercises on, 101.
  for noun, 16, 98.
  for adjective, 39, 98.
  introductory, 106, 222.
  relative, 98, 255, 263.
  place of, 171.
  uses of, 171.
Adverb clause, 263, 274.
  exercises on, 276.
  place of, 252.
Adverb phrase, 187.
Adverbial modifiers, 171, 177.
Adverbial objective, 142, 177.
  as subject, 178.
  exercises on, 180.
  place of, 179.
Adverbial predicate, 136, 213.
Adversative conjunctions, 104.
Agreement, 119.
  with antecedent, 21, 25, 26, 29, 126.
  with subject, 123, 126.
  special cases, 123.
Alternative conjunctions, 103.
  question, 231.
Analysis, 120, 129.
Answers, 231, 233, 287.
Antecedent, 21, 161, 254, 255.
Apparent subject, 119, 226.
Appear, and the like, 134.
Apposition, 104.
Appositive adjectives, 34, 103, 158.
  and factitive, 152, 160.
  clause, 274.
  modifiers, 156, 161.
  nouns, 104, 158.
  place of, 158.
  possessive, 167.
Articles, 39.
As, 26, 106, 115, 124, 152, 157, 160, 289.
  uses of, 115.
As though, etc., 292.
Asserting words, 156.
Attributed gender, 8.
Attributive adjective, 33, 159.
  and appositive, 159.
  modifier, 156, 161.
  noun, 157, 189.
Auxiliary verbs, 48, 61.

BARE elements, 122.
Be, 60, 62, 134.
Become, and the like, 134.
Both, 104.
But, 26, 104, 115.
  uses of, 115.
  with negative, 294.

CAN, 60, 61.
Cardinal adjective, 38.
Case, 13.
  absolute, 182.
  determined, 178, 183.
  nominative uses, 13, 123, 136, 229.
  objective, 13, 140, 144, 229.
  possessive, 13, 165, 166.
Causative verbs, 141.
Cause or reason, 105, 265, 284.
Changed spelling, 93.
Clauses, 120, 244.
  adjective, 252.
  adverb, 105, 263, 279.
  antecedent, 27, 255.
  coördinate, 244, 255.
  dependent, 252, 273.
  descriptive, 253.
  number of, 255.
  restrictive, 253.
  subordinate, 251.
  substantive, 273.
Clauses of time, etc., 105–263.
  of comparison, 105.
Collective noun, 7, 11.
  subject, 124.
Command, 57, 251.
Common nouns, 6.
Comparison
  of adjectives, 3, 34, 38.
  of adverbs, 99.
  clauses of, 105.
Complement
  of infinitive, etc., 153.
  of *be* infinitive, 204, 227.
Complete elements, 122, 238.
  predication, 45, 140.
  sentences, 286.
Complex sentence, 121, 238, 251,
  exercises on, 270.
Compound adjectives, 33.
Compound adverbs, 97.
  conjunctions, 103.
  nouns, 6.
  pronouns, 21, 23, 27, 276.
  verbs, 45.
  prepositions, 109.
Compound sentences, 121, 233, 244.
  subject, 120, 124, 126, 227.
  predicate, 127.
  exercises on, 249.
Compound tenses, 56.
  infinitives, 195.
  participles, 211.
Compound-complex sentences, 282.
  exercises on, 284.
Concession, 50, 105, 265, 275.
Conclusion, 50.
  omitted, 294.
Concrete noun, 6.
Condition, 50, 141, 265, 275.
Conditional mood, 51.
Conjugation, 51.
  old and new, 46, 87.
  of auxiliaries, 60, 62.
  interrogative, 85.
  negative, 85.
  reflexive, 85.
  regular active, 72.
    passive, 77.
Conjunctions, 102, 103.
  coördinating, 103, 228, 246.
  correlative, 103, 269.
  subordinating, 104, 253, 263.
Conjunctive adverbs, 98.
Connecting elements, 120, 128, 188, 246, 251.
Construction, changed, 291.
Conversion, 110, 114, 217.
Coördinate clauses, 244.
Coördinating relatives, 27.
Copulative conjunctions, 103.
Copulative verbs, 45, 134, 141, 152.
  infinitives, 204, 227.
  participles, 213, 216.
Correlative adverbs, 99, 267.
  conjunctions, 103, 267.

DATIVE, 145, 146.
Declarative sentence, 120.

Declension, 14.
of nouns, 21, 24, 25.
pronouns, 27.
Defective verbs, 48.
Definite article, 59.
Definition of elements, 119.
Degrees of comparison, 34.
uses of, 36.
Degree clause, 265.
Demonstrative adjectives, 37.
adverbs, 97.
pronouns, 24.
Dependent clauses, 251, 255.
Derivative adjectives, 33.
adverbs, 97.
conjunctions, 103.
nouns, 6.
prepositions, 110.
pronouns, 24.
verbs, 45.
Descriptive adjectives, 16, 34.
clauses, 253.
nouns, 156.
Diagram, 120, 127.
Difficult ellipses, 290.
Direct object, 140, 143, 147.
Disconnected participles, 216.
Do, 60, 61, 69, 289.

EACH, *either*, etc., 125.
Each other, 158.
Elements of sentence, 119.
bare or grammatical, 122.
independent, 120, 221.
logical, 122.
modifying, 120, 152.
Else, 68.
Elliptical expressions, 197, 284–295.
Emphatic pronouns, 23.
conjugation, 57, 60.
Endings, personal, 58.
Enough, 171.
Exclamation, 114, 239, 241, 295.
Exclamatory sentence, 121, 237, 240.
Exercises on parts of speech:
nouns, 17.
pronouns, 30.
adjectives, 40.
verbs, 93.
Exercises on adverbs, 101.
conjunctions and prepositions, 112.
Exercises in analysis:
subject and predicate, 131.
predicate nominative, 139.
objects direct and indirect, 149.
factitive predicate, 155.
adjective modifiers, 162.
possessive case, 170.
adverbs, 175.
adverbial objective, 180.
nominative absolute, 185.
prepositional phrases, 193.
infinitives, 209.
participles, 219.
independent elements, 225.
interrogative sentences, 235.
imperative and exclamatory sentences, 242.
compound sentences, 249.
adjective clauses, 260.
adverb clauses, 270.
substantive clauses, 280.
abbreviated sentences, 297.

FACTITIVE adjective, 33.
predicate, 33, 151–159.
verb, 46, 135.
Factitive and appositive, 153.
place of, 153.
exercises on, 155.
Feel and the like, 135.
Feminine gender, 7.
First person, 9, 21, 57.
imperative, 238.
For, 135, 152, 157, 186.
Foreign plurals, 11.
Forms of verb, 59.
Forms of conjugation, 51.
questions, 230.
sentences, 241.
Formation of conjugations, 60.
feminine nouns, 7.
moods, 49–59.
plurals, 9.
tenses, 60.
Fractional numerals, 39.
Future tense, 55.
periphrastic, 56, 263.

GENDER of nouns, 7.
attributed, 8.
Give, synopsis, 82.
Government, 119, 165, 186.
Grammar and logic, 215.
Grouping adjectives, 34.
adverbs, 100.
conjunctions, 267.
prepositions, 111.
verbs, 58.

HAD *rather*, *had as lief*, etc., 196, 291.
Have, 60, 66.
He, 22.
Here, in compounds, 99, 100.

IDIOMS, 296.
Illative conjunctions, 104.
Imitative words, 114.
Imperative clause, 267.
Imperative forms, 237.
mood, 52, 56, 59, 237.
sentence, 121, 237, 293.
exercises on, 242.
Impersonal expressions, 124.
object, 143.
subject, 23, 123.
verb, 48, 86, 143.
Incomplete predication, 45, 133, 151.
sentences, 286.
Individual nouns, 7.
Indefinite adjectives, 38.
article, 39.
pronouns, 28, 263, 275, 276.
Independent clauses, 244, 295.
elements, 120, 221, 228.
phrases, 189.
Indicative mood, 49, 51, 266.
Indirect discourse, 24.
object, 140, 147, 162.
question, 51, 277.
Infinitives, 54, 195.
classification of, 196.
exercises on, 209.
modifiers of, 228.
properties of, 195.
sign, 196.
tenses, 197.
uses, 198–205.
Infinitive phrase, 196.
Inflection, 3.
of nouns, 14.
personal pronouns, 21.
demonstrative pronouns, 24.
interrogative pronouns, 25.
relative pronouns, 27.
indefinite pronouns, 29.
verbs, 57.
adverbs, 99.
Interjections, 114.
Interrogatives, 114, 132.
adjectives, 37, 126, 230.
adverbs, 98, 232.
conjugation, 85.
pronouns, 24, 231, 276.
sentences, 126, 230.
exercises on, 233.
Introductory words, 106, 222, 240, 251, 263, 266, 273.
Intransitive verbs, 45, 140.
Inverted clauses, 266.
sentences, 122, 231, 233.
Irregular adjectives, 35.
adverbs, 100.
plurals, 10.
verbs, 46, 87.

JOINT possession, 168.

KINDS of adjectives, 33.
adverbs, 97.
clauses, 105, 120, 244, 251–275.
conjunctions, 102.
nouns, 6.
objects, 141–144.
phrases, 120, 144, 196, 211.
prepositions, 109.
sentences, 119, 121.
verbs, 45.

LESS, *least*, 35, 100.
Let, 238.
Like, 116, 145.
List of irregular verbs, 87.
Logical elements, 122, 215.
relations, 246.
subject, 226.
Love, active, 72.
passive, 77.

MAKE, 141.
Manner and quality, 98, 264.
Masculine gender, 7, 9.
May, 60, 61, 239.
Measure and degree, 98.
Member, 121, 245, 289.
Mixed conjugation, 89.
  sentence, 121.
Modality, 98.
Modified word, 109, 226.
Modifiers of noun:
  appositive, 33, 104, 152.
  attributive, 156, 157, 226.
  possessive, 164.
  predicate, 133.
Modifiers of subject, 226.
  verb, 227.
  predicate word, 228.
  object, 228.
Modifying elements, 132.
  clauses, 251.
Mood, 59.
More, most, 35, 100.
Multiplicatives, 39.
Must, 52, 60, 239.

NATURE of infinitive, 195, 201.
  participle, 211.
Near, 145.
Negative conjugation, 85.
Neither, etc., 125.
Neither or neuter gender, 7.
New conjugation, 16, 47, 90.
Nominative absolute, 182.
  clause as, 274, 292.
  equivalents of, 182.
  determined, 183.
  place of, 183.
  expressions in, 184.
  exercises on, 185.
Nominative case, 13, 123, 139.
  uses of, 229.
Nominative predicate, 133.
Noun, 45.
  for adjective, 16.
  for adverb, 100.
  parsing of, 17.
  properties of, 7.
  substitutes, 14, 15.
Noun, exercises on, 17.
Noun clause, 273.
  uses of, 273.
  exercises on, 280.
No singular, 12.
No plural, 12.
Number of adjectives, 38.
  nouns, 9.
  pronouns, 29–38.
  verbs, 57.
Numeral adjectives, 38.
  adverbs, 103.
Numerous clauses, 257.

OBJECT, clause, 273.
  cognate, 142.
  direct and indirect, 140–144, 227.
  exercises on, 144.
  impersonal, 143.
  modifiers, 227.
  reflexive, 143.
  substitute, 144, 166.
  place of, 144.
Objective case, 14, 145.
  with infinitive, 199, 204.
  with *of*, 14, 157.
  with prepositions, 109, 186, 191.
  uses of, 229.
  subject of passive, 191.
Objective clauses, 263.
  infinitive, 199.
Obligative mood, 52, 60.
  future, 203.
Old conjugation, 87.
Omission of clause, 287.
  conclusion, 294.
  connective, 288.
  infinitive, 288.
  nominative absolute, 292.
  other elements, 286–295.
  participle, 289.
  predicate, 287.
  subject, 293.
  verb, 286.
One another, 158.
Only, 173.
Opposite, 145.
Or, 157.
Order, 119.

Order, in sentence, 122.
of analysis, 129.
Ordinal numeral, 38.

PARSING, 120.
nouns, 17.
pronouns, 29.
adjectives, 39.
verbs, 92.
adverbs, 100.
conjunctions, 107.
prepositions, 111.
Participial adjectives, 33.
conjunctions, 266, 292.
infinitives, 54, 195–199.
phrase, 211.
Participle, 54.
and adjective, 211, 213.
infinitive, 214.
as conjunction, 107, 266, 292.
as preposition, 110, 216.
as noun, 217.
copulative, 213, 216.
disconnected, 216.
exercises on, 219.
modifiers of, 228.
nature of, 211.
syntax of, 211.
uses of, 211.
with nominative absolute, 215.
Parts of speech, 2, 3.
Passive voice, 49, 59, 156.
active for, 217.
formation of, 60.
of *love*, 77.
of *give*, 83.
sentence, 140, 147, 152, 178, 191.
Past tense, 55.
sign, 58.
Perfect tenses, 60.
Periphrastic future, 56, 263.
Person of nouns, 9.
pronouns, 21.
verbs, 48, 57.
Personal endings, 58.
inflections, 21.
pronouns, 21.
subject, 119.
verbs, 57.

Phrase, 120.
absolute, 189.
infinitive, 196.
independent, 189.
participial, 211.
place of, 188.
prepositional, 109, 144, 186.
substitute for, 187, 189.
uses of, 187, 188.
exercises on, 193.
Place of adverb, 171.
adjective, 156, 158.
adjective clause, 252.
adverbial clause, 270.
appositive, 158.
attributive, 156.
nominative absolute, 183.
objects, 145.
possessive, 168.
predicate adjective, 156.
predicate nominative, 133, 137.
predicate objective, 153.
preposition, 109.
prepositional phrase, 188, 189.
relative clause, 257.
Place and motion, 97, 264.
Plural of nouns, 9–13.
Position and motion, 135.
Possessive adjectives, 37.
Possessive case, 14, 161, 187.
as antecedent, 167.
exercises on, 169.
limited, 15.
modifiers, 164.
of compounds, 15, 167.
phrases, 15.
place of, 168.
sign, 15, 167.
substitute for, 14, 165.
with *of*, 166.
uses of, 14, 164, 229.
Potential mood, 52, 59.
Predicate, 120, 227.
adverbial, 136.
bare, 122.
complete or logical, 122, 140.
compound, 127.
incomplete, 14, 133, 151.
nominative, 120, 133, 152.

Predicate, nominative, exercises on, 139.
objective, 151, 152.
exercises on, 155.
omitted, 287.
place of, 152.
exercises on, 131.
Predicate adjective, 35, 156.
clause, 273.
modifiers, 156.
pronoun, 122.
words, 153.
exercises on, 139.
Prefix, 6.
Prepositions, 108, 228.
as adverbs, 100.
groups of, 111.
relations of, 186.
participial, 216.
Prepositional phrases, 109, 144, 186, 189, 295.
Present tense, 55.
infinitive, 54, 196.
participle, 54, 211.
Principal parts, 46, 87.
verb, 48.
elements, 49, 119.
Progressive conjugation, 57, 60.
Pronominal adjectives, 36.
Pronouns, 20, 21, 137.
declension of, 21.
demonstrative, 24.
interrogative, 24.
indefinite, 28.
personal, 21.
predicate, 136.
relative, 25.
Proper nouns, 6.
adjectives, 33.
Properties of nouns, 7, 9, 13.
pronouns, 21.
verbs, 48.
Punctuation, i., sentence, 127.
ii., series, 127.
iii., log. subj., 127.
iv., appositive, 158.
v., nom. abs., 183.
vi., phrase, 191.
vii., address, 222.
viii., exclamation, 222.
Punctuation, ix., headings, 223.
x., questions, 234.
xi., exclam. sent., 241.
xii., coör. clauses, 247.
xiii., subdiv. mem., 247.
xiv., added clauses, 247.
xv., particulars, 247.
xvi., restrictive cl., 258.
xvii., adv. clause, 267.
xviii., quotations, 278.
xix., quotation marks, 278.
Pure adverbs, 98.
Purpose clause, 105, 265.

QUALIFYING adjectives, 34, 156.
Questions, 250.
alternative, 232.
and answers, 287.
as to predication, 230.
as to subject, etc., 232.
exercises on, 235.
Quotation, 277.

RECIPROCAL pronouns, 158.
Redundant verbs, 46, 143.
Reflexive object, 143, 154.
pronouns, 23.
verbs, 46, 143.
Regular comparison, 35, 102.
plural, 9.
verbs, 46.
Relations of prepositions, 186.
logical, 246.
Relative adjectives, 37, 252.
adverbs, 98, 253, 263.
conjunctions, 85, 253.
pronouns, 25, 253, 263, 276.
office of, 257.
words, 107.
omitted, 257, 288.
Responsives, 99, 231.
Restrictive adjectives, 34.
clauses, 253.
Result clause, 265.
Retained object, 147, 227.
Root infinitive, 54, 195.
uses of, 198, 201.
Rules of syntax, i., subject nom., 123.
ii., verb, 123.

Rules of syntax, iii., verb, 126.
iv., predicate nom., 138.
v., objects of verb, 146.
vi., objective case, 146.
vii., factitive obj., 153.
viii., appositive, 158.
ix., adjectives, 158.
x., possessives, 168.
xi., adverbs, 174.
xii., adv. objective, 179.
xiii., nom. absolute, 183.
xiv., phrases, 191.
xv., words of address, 222.
xvi., exclamations, 222.
xvii., pleonasms, 223.
xviii., rel. pronouns, 258.

SECOND person imperative, 239.
Self, 23.
Sentence, 119.
abbreviated, 286.
compound, 121, 244.
complex, 121, 251.
compound-complex, 282.
declarative, 120.
elements of, 119.
exclamatory, 121, 237, 240.
interrogative, 124, 230.
imperative, 121, 237, 293.
inverted, 122, 231.
Several possession, 168.
Shall, 58, 60, 61, 239.
Should, 51.
Sign, infinitive, 196.
possessive, 14, 167.
tense, 58.
Simple adjective, 33.
adverb, 97.
conjugation, 57.
conjunction, 103.
noun, 6.
participle, 211.
predicate, 122.
preposition, 110.
pronoun, 21.
sentence, 119, 226, 287.
subject, 122, 227.
tenses, 55.
verb, 44.
Singular, 9, 123, 126.
So, 173, 289.
So as, with inf., 292.
Special constructions, 123.
Spelling changed, 93.
Spelling of comparatives, 35.
past tense, 58.
participles, 54, 211, 213.
Subject, 119.
and predicate, 122.
apparent, 99, 173, 226.
bare, 122, 226.
compound, 125.
clause, 273.
exercises on, 131.
logical, 122, 226.
modifiers, 226.
object made, 49, 146.
of imperative verb, 237.
of passive verb, 49, 146, 178, 190.
omitted, 293.
simple, 122.
Subjective infinitive, 199.
Subjunctive mood, 49, 59, 239, 266, 289.
Subordinate elements, 120.
clauses, 251.
Subordinating conjunctions, 109, 253, 263.
Substantive, 15.
clause, 273.
exercises on, 280.
infinitive, 200.
phrase, 186.
Substitute for adjective, 39, 289.
adverb, 100, 289.
cases, 189.
conjunction, 106.
imperative, 49, 51, 238.
noun, 15, 40, 109.
possessive case, 14, 164, 166.
preposition, 110.
phrase, 187, 189.
pronouns, 24, 27, 29.
relatives, 27.
verb, 289.
Suffix, 6.
Synopsis, 82.
of *give*, 82.
Syntax, 119.

TENSES, 55, 56.
of infinitive, 197.
participle, 211.
Than, 289.
That, adj., 37, 116, 160.
conjunction, 106, 116, 273, 278.
pronoun, 24, 116, 254.
uses of, 116, 256.
The, article, 39.
adverb, 99, 267.
There, 99, 173.
They, indefinite, 28.
This, adj., 37, 160.
pronoun, 24, 160.
Time and succession, 97, 99, 264.
To, 186, 196, 166.
value of, 202.
Transitive verbs, 45, 140–145.

USES of absolute const., 182.
adverbs, 98.
adverb clauses, 264.
auxiliaries, 60.
cases, 13, 15.
nominative, 229.
objective, 229.
possessive, 164, 229.
conjunctions, 106.
conditional, 51.
compound relatives, 27.
degrees, 36.
imperative, 55.
indicative, 50.
infinitive, 195, 206.
may, 52, 238.
nouns, 5, 229.
participles, 60, 212.
potential, 52.
prep. phrases, 187, 188.
pronouns, 22, 26.
relative words, 107.
should, 51.
subjunctive, 50.
substantive clauses, 273.
would, 52.

VALUE of *to*, 202.
Verb, 44, 45.
auxiliary, 48, 61.
Verb, cognate, 142.
complete, 45.
copulative, 45, 121.
causative, 141.
defective, 48.
factitive, 143, 151.
forms, 59.
impersonal, 143.
intransitive, 45, 140.
irregular, 46, 87.
made factitive, 152.
made transitive, 142.
modifiers of, 227.
of being and condition, 140.
omitted, 286.
reflexive, 143.
redundant, 47.
regular, 46.
transitive, 45, 140.
Voice, 48.
Vocative, 221, 228, 239.

WE, 22.
What, adjective, 37.
interrogative, 25, 37, 117.
introductory, 241.
rel. pronoun, 36.
uses of, 117.
Where in compounds, 27, 99, 100.
Whether, 25, 106.
Which, adjective, 37.
coördinating, 27, 246.
interrogative, 25, 37.
rel. pronoun, 26.
Who, coördinating, 27, 246.
interrogative, 25, 37.
introductory, 240.
relative, 26, 254.
Whose, 26, 37.
Will, 60, 61.
Wish, 50, 114, 295.
Word predicate, 133.
Words, dif. parts of speech, 106, 115.
converted, 15, 110, 114.

YE, 22.
You, indefinite, 28.
singular, 126.